THE

Compleat Sportſman;

OR

Country Gentleman's

RECREATION.

CONTAINING

The very beſt Inſtructions under the following Heads.

VIZ.

Of Breeding and the Management of *Game Cocks*.
Of *Cock fighting*.
Of *Colts*, and backing *Colts*.
Of the Breeding and Management of *Race Horſes*. *Hunters*, &c.
Of *Horſe-Racing*.
Of *Bowling*.
Of *Courſing*
Of *Hare-hunting*.
Of *Fox-hunting*.
Of *Buck-hunting*.
Of Breeding and Ordering all Manner of *Dogs*, *Pigeons*, *Rabbets*, &c.
Of *Angling*.
Of *Otters* and *Otter-hunting*.
Of *Pheaſants*, *Partridges*, *Woodcocks*, and all Manner of Game.
Of Breeding and Managing *Canary-Birds*, &c. &c.

And ſeveral other Articles too numerous to be mentioned in a Title Page.

Compiled by Mr. T. FAIRFAX.

——By Exerciſe the flaccid Nerves
Grow firm, and gain a more compacted Tone.

Dr. ARMSTRONG

LONDON:
Printed for J. COOKE, at Shakeſpear's-head, in Pater-Noſter-Row. MDCCLXII.

THE Compleat Sportſman: OR, COUNTRY-GENTLEMAN'S RECREATION.

Of GAME-COCKS, and COCK-FIGHTING.

Of the Choice of COCKS.

THE beſt properties for the choice of fighting-cocks, is their ſhape, colour, and courage, and ſharp heels or ſpurs. As to their ſhape, the middle ſized ones are eſteemed the beſt, as being ſooneſt and eaſieſt matched, as alſo the nimbleſt and generally of moſt courage; whereas the large ones (called the turn pock) it is difficult to find their equal; beſides they are, for the moſt part, heavy, not ſhewing that ſport in a battle: likewiſe the ſmall ſized ones are weak and tedious in battle.

The Shape.

He ſhould be of a proud and upright ſhape, with a ſmall head, a quick large eye, with a ſtrong back, crooked and big at the ſetting on the beam of his legs, very ſtrong, and, according to his plume, grey, blue, or yellow; his ſpurs long, rough and ſharp, a little bending inwards.

His Colour.

The grey pile, yellow pile, or red, with the black breaſt, is eſteemed the beſt; the pied is not ſo good, and the white and dun worſt of all.

If he is red about the head, like Scarlet, it is a ſign of ſtrength, luſt and courage; but if pale, it is a ſign of faintneſs and ſickneſs.

His Courage.

His courage is ſhewed by his walk, treading, and pride of his going, and in pen by his frequent crowing: for the ſharpneſs of his heel, or, as the cock maſters call it, the narrow heel is only ſeen in his fighting; for the cock is ſaid to be ſharp heeled, or narrow heeled, which every time he riſes, hits and draws blood of his adverſary, gilding (as they term it) his ſpurs in blood, and every blow threatening the other's death.

And ſuch cocks are the beſt; for a ſharp heeled cock, though he be a little falſe, is deemed much better than the trueſt cock that hath a dull heel, and hits ſeldom.

But that cock which is both hard, and very ſharp heeled, is to be eſteemed above others; therefore in your choice, chuſe ſuch an one as is of a ſtrong ſhape, good colour, and of a moſt ſharp and ready heel.

Of Breeding.

For the breeding theſe cocks for battle, it is much different from thoſe of the dunghill; for they are like birds

birds of prey, in which the female is of better eſteem than the male; and ſo in the breeding of theſe cocks, be ſure that the hens be right, that is, they muſt be of a right plume, as grey, grizzle, ſpeckled or yellowiſh.

Black or brown is not amiſs, their bodies large, and well pouked behind for large eggs, and well tufted on the crowns, which ſhows good courage.

If they have weapons, it is the better; alſo they muſt be of a good courage, otherwiſe their chickens will not be good.

And it is obſervable, that the perfect hen from a dunghill-cock, will bring a good chicken; but the beſt cock from a dunghill-hen, can never get a good one.

Thus having got a breed of perfect cocks and hens, the beſt ſeaſon of the year to breed in, is from the increaſe of the moon in *February*, to the increaſe of the moon in *March*, for a *March* bird is of far greater eſteem than thoſe bred at other times.

Let the pen where ſhe ſits be placed warm, with ſoft ſweet ſtraw therein for her neſt, they being much tenderer than the dunghill hens, and permit no other fowl to come where ſhe ſits, for that will diſturb her.

You ſhould obſerve, if ſhe be buſy in turning her eggs (being a good ſign) if not, do it at ſuch times as ſhe riſeth from her neſt; and be ſure that ſhe hath always meat and water by her, leaſt when ſhe riſeth, ſhe ſhould ſtay long to ſeek food, and ſo her eggs ſhould be chilled and ſpoiled.

Likewiſe in the place where ſhe ſits, let there be ſand, gravel, and fine ſifted aſhes, to bath and trim herſelf at pleaſure.

In about three weeks ſhe will hatch, and obſerve, that if ſhe doth cover and keep the firſt warm till the reſt are hatched, take thoſe from her, and keep them warm in wool by the fire, till all are hatched, and then put them under her, keeping both the hen and chickens very warm, not ſuffering them to go abroad for

three weeks or a month in the cold; for they are ſo tender, that cold will kill them.

Let them have plenty of food, as oatmeal, cheeſe parings, fine ſmall wheat, and the *like*, and a large room to walk in, with a boarded floor; for that of earth or brick, is too cold or moiſt.

After three or four weeks, let them walk in your court-yard, or garden, to pick worms, provided there is no ſinks or puddles of ſtinking water, which is as bad as poiſon for them to drink, engendering corrupt diſeaſes.

After this manner keep them till you can know the cock chickens from the hens; and when you perceive their combs or wattles to appear, cut them off, anoint the ſore with ſweet butter, till well; and this will make them have fine, ſmall, ſlender, and ſmooth heads; whereas if you let the combs grow to their bigneſs, and then cut them off, it will cauſe them to have gouty thick heads, with great lumps; neither is the flux of blood good, for the leaſt loſs of blood in a feathered fowl, is very dangerous.

Let the cock chickens go with their hens, till they begin to fight one with another; but then ſeparate them into ſeveral walks, and that walk is the beſt, that is freeſt from the reſort of others.

Let the feeding places be upon ſoft dry ground, or upon boards; for to feed them upon pavements, or on plaiſter floors, will make their beaks blunt and weak, ſo that it will hinder their holding faſt.

Any white corn, as oats, barley, or wheat, is good food for a cock in his walk; ſo are toaſts, or cruſts of bread ſteeped in beer or wine, for it will both ſcour and cool them inwardly.

If your chickens begin to crow at about ſix months old, clear and loud, or at unſeaſonable times, it is a ſign of cowardice and falſhood, ſo that they are not worth the rearing; for the true cock is very long before

before he can get his voice, and then he obſerves his hours.

To one cock four or five hens are ſufficient; for they are of ſo hot a nature, and will tread ſo much, that they ſoon conſume their natural ſtrength.

At two years old you may put a cock to the battle, as not being before perfect and compleat in every member; for to ſuffer him to fight when his ſpurs are but warts, you may know their courage, but not their goodneſs.

You muſt alſo be circumſpect about the pearch whereon he rooſteth; for if it be too ſmall in the gripe, or crooked, or ſo ill placed, that he cannot ſit without ſtradling, it will make him uneven heeled, and by conſequence no good ſtriker.

Seeing therefore that the pearch is of ſuch conſequence for the marring or making them, the beſt way is to make a row of little perches, not above ſeven or eight inches long, and about a foot from the ground, ſo that with eaſe they may go up to them; and being ſet, muſt have their legs cloſe, the ſhortneſs of the perch not admitting otherwiſe; and it is a maxim, *He that is a cloſe ſitter, is always a narrow ſtriker.*

You muſt alſo be careful, that when your cock doth leap from the pearch, the ground be ſoft whereupon he lighteth; for hard ground cauſeth goutineſs.

Of dieting and ordering COCKS.

For dieting and ordering a cock for the battle, which is the principal thing (for the beſt cock undieted, is not able to encounter with the worſt that is dieted,) obſerve theſe directions.

The beſt time to take up your cocks, is the latter end of *Auguſt*, (for from that time, till the latter end of *May*, cocking is in requeſt;) and having viewed them well, and that they are ſound, hard feathered, and full ſummed, put them into ſeveral pens.

Now for the true making them, it were more convenient to viſit ſome Cock-maſter, for an ocular ſight is better than a verbal deſcription; only let me tell you, it ſhould be made of cloſe boards, well joined together, all but the fore part, which muſt be made open like a grate, the bars about two inches apart, and before the grate, two large troughs of ſoft wood, the one for water, and the other for meat; the door of the grate to be made to lift up and down, and of ſuch largeneſs, as with eaſe to put the cock in, and take him out, and to clean the pen daily to keep it ſweet.

The pen ſhould be at leaſt three foot high, and two foot ſquare, of theſe pens many may be joined in one front, according to the uſe you have for them.

For the firſt three or four days that they are put in their pens, feed them only with old wheat bread, the cruſt pared away, and cut into little ſquare bits, with which feed them at ſun-riſing, and ſun-ſet, giving them about a handful at a time; and beſure let him not be without good freſh water.

After they have been thus fed four days, and their crops cleared of the corn, worms, and other coarſe feeding, in the morning take them out of their pens, putting a pair of hots upon each of their heels, which hots are ſoft bombaſted rolls of leather, covering their ſpurs, that they cannot hurt or bruiſe one another, ſo ſetting them down upon the graſs, (that is two at a time) let them fight and buffle one another for a good while, provided they do not wound or draw blood of each other, and this is called ſparring of cocks.

The reaſon of thus exerciſing them, is to chafe and heat their bodies, to break the fat and glut within them, and to cauſe it to come away.

Your cocks being ſparred ſufficiently, and that you ſee them pant and grow weary, take them up and untie their hots; then being provided with deep ſtraw baſkets made for that purpoſe, with ſweet ſoft ſtraw

to

to the middle, put into each baſket a cock, covering him over with the like ſtraw to the top; then put on the lid cloſe, ſo let him ſweat and ſtove till the evening: but before you put him into the baſket, give him a pretty big lump of ſweet butter, with white ſugar candy, and roſemary finely chopped, and this ſcouring will bring away his greaſe, and breed breath and ſtrength.

In the evening, about four or five of the clock, take them out of the ſtoving baſket, and licking their heads and eyes all over, put them into the pens, then take a good handful of bread cut ſmall, put it to each in their troughs, and piſs therein, ſo that the cock may take the bread out of the warm urine, and this will ſcour and cleanſe both the head and the body extreamly.

The bread that you muſt now and afterwards give them, muſt not be fine white bread, but a ſort made for that purpoſe, after this manner:

Take half a peck of wheat meal, and the like quantity of fine oatmeal; mix theſe together, and knead them into a ſtiff paſte, with ale, the whites of twelve eggs, and half a pound of butter.

This paſte being well wrought, make it into broad thin cakes, and being three or four days old, and the bliſter rings cut away, cut it into little ſquare bits, and give it to the cocks.

There are ſome that will mix in the ſaid bread, liquorice, aniſeed, with hot ſpices; but this is not good, as making them too hot at heart, ſo that when they come to the latter end of a battle, they areovercome with their heat.

Having fed your cocks thus after their ſparring, the next day let them reſt, only give them their ordinary feeding of bread and water; then the next day (which is the ſparring) take them into a fair, even, green cloſe, there ſet down one of them, and having a dunghill

Now for the true making them, it were more convenient to viſit ſome Cock-maſter, for an ocular ſight is better than a verbal deſcription; only let me tell you, it ſhould be made of cloſe boards, well joined together, all but the fore part, which muſt be made open like a grate, the bars about two inches apart, and before the grate, two large troughs of ſoft wood, the one for water, and the other for meat; the door of the grate to be made to lift up and down, and of ſuch largeneſs, as with eaſe to put the cock in, and take him out, and to clean the pen daily to keep it ſweet.

The pen ſhould be at leaſt three foot high, and two foot ſquare, of theſe pens many may be joined in one front, according to the uſe you have for them.

For the firſt three or four days that they are put in their pens, feed them only with old wheat bread, the cruſt pared away, and cut into little ſquare bits, with which feed them at ſun-riſing, and ſun-ſet, giving them about a handful at a time; and beſure let him not be without good freſh water.

After they have been thus fed four days, and their crops cleared of the corn, worms, and other coarſe feeding, in the morning take them out of their pens, putting a pair of hots upon each of their heels, which hots are ſoft bombaſted rolls of leather, covering their ſpurs, that they cannot hurt or bruiſe one another, ſo ſetting them down upon the graſs, (that is two at a time) let them fight and buffle one another for a good while, provided they do not wound or draw blood of each other, and this is called ſparring of cocks.

The reaſon of thus exerciſing them, is to chafe and heat their bodies, to break the fat and glut within them, and to cauſe it to come away.

Your cocks being ſparred ſufficiently, and that you ſee them pant and grow weary, take them up and untie their hots; then being provided with deep ſtraw baſkets made for that purpoſe, with ſweet ſoft ſtraw

to

to the middle, put into each baſket a cock, covering him over with the like ſtraw to the top; then put on the lid cloſe, ſo let him ſweat and ſtove till the evening: but before you put him into the baſket, give him a pretty big lump of ſweet butter, with white ſugar candy, and roſemary finely chopped, and this ſcouring will bring away his greaſe, and breed breath and ſtrength.

In the evening, about four or five of the clock, take them out of the ſtoving baſket, and licking their heads and eyes all over, put them into the pens, then take a good handful of bread cut ſmall, put it to each in their troughs, and piſs therein, ſo that the cock may take the bread out of the warm urine, and this will ſcour and cleanſe both the head and the body extreamly.

The bread that you muſt now and afterwards give them, muſt not be fine white bread, but a ſort made for that purpoſe, after this manner:

Take half a peck of wheat meal, and the like quantity of fine oatmeal; mix theſe together, and knead them into a ſtiff paſte, with ale, the whites of twelve eggs, and half a pound of butter.

This paſte being well wrought, make it into broad thin cakes, and being three or four days old, and the bliſter rings cut away, cut it into little ſquare bits, and give it to the cocks.

There are ſome that will mix in the ſaid bread, liquorice, aniſeed, with hot ſpices; but this is not good, as making them too hot at heart, ſo that when they come to the latter end of a battle, they areovercome with their heat.

Having fed your cocks thus after their ſparring, the next day let them reſt, only give them their ordinary feeding of bread and water; then the next day (which is the ſparring) take them into a fair, even, green cloſe, there ſet down one of them, and having a dunghill

Now for the true making them, it were more convenient to viſit ſome Cock-maſter, for an ocular ſight is better than a verbal deſcription; only let me tell you, it ſhould be made of cloſe boards, well joined together, all but the fore part, which muſt be made open like a grate, the bars about two inches apart, and before the grate, two large troughs of ſoft wood, the one for water, and the other for meat; the door of the grate to be made to lift up and down, and of ſuch largeneſs, as with eaſe to put the cock in, and take him out, and to clean the pen daily to keep it ſweet.

The pen ſhould be at leaſt three foot high, and two foot ſquare, of theſe pens many may be joined in one front, according to the uſe you have for them.

For the firſt three or four days that they are put in their pens, feed them only with old wheat bread, the cruſt pared away, and cut into little ſquare bits, with which feed them at ſun-riſing, and ſun-ſet, giving them about a handful at a time; and before let him not be without good freſh water.

After they have been thus fed four days, and their crops cleared of the corn, worms, and other coarſe feeding, in the morning take them out of their pens, putting a pair of hots upon each of their heels, which hots are ſoft bombaſted rolls of leather, covering their ſpurs, that they cannot hurt or bruiſe one another, ſo ſetting them down upon the graſs, (that is two at a time) let them fight and buffle one another for a good while, provided they do not wound or draw blood of each other, and this is called ſparring of cocks.

The reaſon of thus exerciſing them, is to chafe and heat their bodies, to break the fat and glut within them, and to cauſe it to come away.

Your cocks being ſparred ſufficiently, and that you ſee them pant and grow weary, take them up and untie their hots; then being provided with deep ſtraw baſkets made for that purpoſe, with ſweet ſoft ſtraw

to

to the middle, put into each baſket a cock, covering him over with the like ſtraw to the top; then put on the lid cloſe, ſo let him ſweat and ſtove till the evening: but before you put him into the baſket, give him a pretty big lump of ſweet butter, with white ſugar candy, and roſemary finely chopped, and this ſcouring will bring away his greaſe, and breed breath and ſtrength.

In the evening, about four or five of the clock, take them out of the ſtoving baſket, and licking their heads and eyes all over, put them into the pens, then take a good handful of bread cut ſmall, put it to each in their troughs, and piſs therein, ſo that the cock may take the bread out of the warm urine, and this will ſcour and cleanſe both the head and the body extreamly.

The bread that you muſt now and afterwards give them, muſt not be fine white bread, but a ſort made for that purpoſe, after this manner:

Take half a peck of wheat meal, and the like quantity of fine oatmeal; mix theſe together, and knead them into a ſtiff paſte, with ale, the whites of twelve eggs, and half a pound of butter.

This paſte being well wrought, make it into broad thin cakes, and being three or four days old, and the bliſter rings cut away, cut it into little ſquare bits, and give it to the cocks.

There are ſome that will mix in the ſaid bread, liquorice, aniſeed, with hot ſpices; but this is not good, as making them too hot at heart, ſo that when they come to the latter end of a battle, they areovercome with their heat.

Having fed your cocks thus after their ſparring, the next day let them reſt, only give them their ordinary feeding of bread and water; then the next day (which is the ſparring) take them into a fair, even, green cloſe, there ſet down one of them, and having a dunghill

cock in your arms, ſhew it him, running from him, enticing him to follow you; and ſo chafe him up and down for half an hour, ſuffering him now and then to have a ſtroke at him; and when you ſee him well heated and panteth, take him up, and carry him to his pen, the like do with the reſt, and there give him his ſcouring; take freſh butter, (that is, without ſalt) half a pound; beat it in a mortar, with the herb of grace, hyſop, and roſemary, until the herbs are incorporated therein, and that the butter is brought to a green ſalve; and of this give the cock a roll or two, as big as he can well ſwallow; then ſtove him in the baſket, as aforeſaid, until the evening; then take him out, put him in his pen, and feed him as before directed.

The next day let him reſt and feed, and the day following again ſparr him; and this method obſerve every other day for the firſt fortnight, to ſpar or chafe him, as being the moſt natural and kindlieſt heats; but forget not to give him a ſcouring after every heat, as aforeſaid, for the breaking and cleanſing him from greaſe, glut and filth, which lying in his body cauſeth purſineſs and faintneſs, ſo that he cannot ſtand out the latter end of a battle.

Thus having fed your cock the firſt fortnight, obſerve the ſame rules the next fortnight; but, for a week do not ſpar him, or give him heats above twice a week, ſo that three or four times in a fortnight will be ſufficient; and each time ſtove and ſcour him, according to the nature of his heats, long heats requiring longer ſtoving, as alſo greater ſcouring.

But if you find him in good breath, and that he requires but ſlight heats, then ſtove him the leſs, and give him the leſs ſcouring.

For the third fortnight, which compleats the ſix weeks, (which is ſufficient to prepare a cock for battle) feed him as aforeſaid, but ſpar him not at all, for

fear

fear of making his head tender and ſore, neither give him any violent exerciſe, but only two or three times in the fortnight, let him moderately be chaſed up and down, to maintain his wind; and now and then cuff a cock; which you muſt hold in your hands; which done, give him his ſcouring, well rolled up in powder of brown ſugar candy; for the cock being now come to his perfect breath, and clear from filth in his body, the ſugar prevents that ſickneſs which the ſcouring would then cauſe, and alſo ſtrengthens nature againſt the medicine.

Matching of fighting COCKS.

Your ſix weeks feeding being finiſhed, and finding your cock in luſt and breath, he is fit to fight, always obſerving, that he hath at leaſt three days reſt before fighting, and be well emptied of meat before you bring him into the pit.

Being brought into the pit, your chief care muſt be in the matching him, in which conſiſts the greateſt glory of a cock-maſter; therefore in your matching there are but two things to be conſidered, *viz.* the ſtrength of cocks, and the length of cocks; for if he be too ſtrong, he will overbear your cock, not permitting him to riſe, or ſtrike with any advantage; if he be too long, your cock will hardly catch his head, ſo that he can neither endanger eye nor life.

Now for the knowledge of theſe, there are two rules: as for his ſtrength, it is known by the thickneſs of his body, that cock being held ſtrongeſt which is largeſt in the girth, which may be eaſily known by the meaſuring him with your fingers: as for his length, it is eaſily known, by griping him about the middle, cauſing him to ſtretch forth his legs; but if you are doubtful of loſing in the one, yet are ſure to gain in the other, you may venture to match.

Your cock being matched thus, prepare him to the

battle: firſt, with a fine pair of cock-ſhears, cut off his mane cloſe to the neck, from his head to the ſetting on of his ſhoulders; then clip off all the feathers from his tail cloſe to his rump, which the more ſcarlet it appears, the better eſtate of body he is in: then take his wings, extending them forth by the firſt feather, clip the reſt ſlopewiſe, with ſharp points, that in his riſing he may endanger the eyes of his adverſary; then, with a ſharp knife, ſcrape ſmooth and ſharpen his beak, and alſo ſmooth and ſharpen his ſpurs; and laſtly, ſee that there be no feathers about the crown of his head for his adverſary to take hold of; then, with your ſpittle, moiſten his head all over, and ſo turn him into the pit to try his fortune.

The battle being ended, your firſt buſineſs muſt be to ſearch his wounds, and ſuch as you find, ſuck out the blood with your mouth; then waſh them with warm urine to keep them from rankling, and preſently give him a bit or two of your beſt ſcouring, and ſo ſtove him up as hot as you can for that night; and in the morning take him forth, and if you ſee his head much ſwelled, ſuck it with your mouth, as aforeſaid, and bath it with warm urine.

Then having the powder of the herb *Robert*, well dried, and finely ſifted, pounce all the ſore places therewith, and give him a good handful of bread to eat, out of warm wine, and then put him into the ſtove again, as before directed, being very careful that no air come to him till the ſwelling is gone; but twice a day ſuck and dreſs him, feed him as aforeſaid.

But if your cock has received any hurt in his eye, then take a leaf or two of right ground-ivy, that is, ſuch as grows in little tufts in the bottom of hedges; chew this in your mouth very well, ſucking out the juice, which ſquirting into his eye two or three times, will ſoon cure it, provided the ſight is not pierced; and it will alſo preſerve the eye from films, flaws, warts, &c.

If

If your cock hath veined himſelf, either by narrow ſtriking, or other croſs blow, find out the wound, and preſently bind unto it the ſoft down of a hare, and it will both ſtanch it, and cure it.

After your wounded cocks are put forth to their walks, as being fit to go abroad, and when you come to viſit them in about a month or two after, if you find any hard ſwelled bunches about their heads, blackiſh at one end, it is a ſign of unſound cores; and then with a ſharp pen-knife open them, and cruſh out the ſaid cores; then ſuck out all the corruption, and fill the holes with freſh butter, which will perfect the cure.

Of COLTS.

COLT, a word in general, ſignifying the male and female of the horſe kind; the firſt likewiſe, for diſtinction ſake, being called a horſe colt, and the other a filly.

After the colts have been foaled, you may ſuffer them to run with the mare till about *Michaelmas*, ſooner or later, according as the cold weather comes in; then they muſt be weaned; tho' ſome perſons are for having them weaned after *Martinmaſs*, or the middle of *November*, and that three days before the full of the moon: but the author of the *Compleat Horſeman* is of opinion, that the reaſon why moſt foals advance ſo ſlowly, and are not capable of ſervice till they are ſix or ſeven years old, is becauſe they have not ſucked long enough; whereas if they had ſucked the whole winter over, they would be as good at four or five years old, as they are now at eight.

They ought to be kept in a convenient houſe, with a low rack and manger for their hay and oats, which muſt be ſweet and good; with a little wheaten bran mixed with the oats, to cauſe them to drink and to keep their bodies open.

But ſince there are ſome who alledge, that oats make foals become blind, or their teeth crooked; the ſame author is of opinion, that oats will wear their teeth, and make them the ſooner to change, and alſo to raze; therefore he judges it to be the beſt way to break them in a mill, becauſe by endeavouring with their jaws to bruiſe and chew them, they ſtretch and ſwell their eye and néther jaw-veins, which ſo attract the blood and humours, that they fall down upon the eyes, and frequently occaſion the loſs of them: ſo that it is not the heating qualities of oats, but the difficulty in chewing, that is the cauſe of their blindneſs.

Further, that colts thus fed with grain, do not grow thickiſh upon their legs, but grow broader, and better knit, than if they had eaten nothing but hay and bran, and will endure fatigue the better.

But above all they muſt be kept from wet and cold, which are the hurtfulleſt things imaginable to them, nothing being more tender than they are.

For proof of this, take a Spaniſh ſtallion, and let him cover two mares, which for age, beauty, and comlineſs, may admit of no differance between them; and if they be both horſe colts, or both fillies, which is one and the ſame thing, let one run abroad, and the other be houſed, every winter, kept warm, and ordinarily attended, as aforeſaid; and that colt that has been kept abroad ſhall have large fleſhy ſhoulders, flabby and gouty legs, weak paſterns, and ill hoofs; and ſhall be a dull, heavy jade, in compariſon to the other which is houſed, and orderly kept, as before; and which will have a fine forehead, be well ſhaped, have good legs and hoofs, and be of good ſtrength and ſpirit: by which you may know, that to have the fineſt ſtallion, and the beautifuleſt mare, is nothing, if they are ſpoiled in the breeding up.

It is worth obſervation, that ſome foals, under ſix months old, tho' their dams yield abundance of milk, yet

yet decay daily, and have a cough, proceeding from certain pellicles, or ſkins that breed in their ſtomachs, which obſtruct their breathing, and at laſt deſtroy them intirely.

To remedy this malady, take the bag wherein the colt was foaled, dry it, and give him as much of it in milk as you can take up with three fingers: but if you have not preſerved the bag, procure the lungs of a young fox, and uſe it inſtead of the aforeſaid powder.

It will be proper to let the colts play an hour or two in ſome court-yard, or the like place, when it is fair weather, provided you put them up again carefully, and ſee that they take no harm.

When the winter is ſpent, turn them into ſome dry ground, where the graſs is ſhort and ſweet, and where there is good water, that they may drink at pleaſure; for it is not neceſſary that a colt ſhould fill his belly immediately, like a horſe that labours hard.

The next winter you may take them into the houſe, and uſe them juſt as your other horſes; but let not your horſe-colts and fillies be kept together, after the firſt year.

This method may be obſerved every ſummer and winter, till you break them, which you may do after they have been three years old; and it will be a very eaſy thing, if you obſerve the aforeſaid method of houſing them, for ordering them the ſecond year as you do other horſes, that they will be ſo tame and gentle, that you need not fear their plunging, leaping, kicking, or the like coltiſh tricks; for they will take the ſaddle quietly.

As for all thoſe ridiculous ways of beating and cowing them, they are, in effect, ſpoiling them, whatever they call it, in ploughed fields, deep ways, or the like; inſtead of which, let the rider ſtrive to win them by gentle uſuage, never correcting them but when it is neceſſary, and then with judgment and moderation.

You

You will not need a caveſſon of cord, which is a head-ſtrain, nor a pad of ſtraw; but only a common ſaddle, and a common caveſſon on his noſe, ſuch as other horſes are ridden with; but it ought to be well lined with double leather, as the reſt are; and if you pleaſe you may put on his mouth a watering-bit, without reins, only the head-ſtall, and this but for a few days; and then put on ſuch a bit as he ſhould be always ridden with: and be ſure not to uſe ſpurs for ſome time after backing.

Take notice, that as yearlings muſt be kept abroad together, ſo thoſe of two years old together; the like for thoſe of three yearlings, which ordering is moſt agreeable to them.

In order to make him endure the ſaddle the better, the way to make it familiar to him will be, by clapping the ſaddle with your hand as it ſtands upon his back, by ſtriking it, and ſwaying upon it, dangling the ſtirrups by his ſides, rubbing them againſt his ſides, and making much of him, and bring him to be familiar with all things about him; as ſtraining the crupper, faſtening and looſening the girths, and taking up and letting out the ſtirrups.

Then as to the mouthing of him, when he will trot with the ſaddle obediently, then waſh a trench of a full mouth, and put the ſame into his mouth, throwing the reins over the fore part of the ſaddle, ſo that he may have a full feeling of it; then put on a martingal, buckled at ſuch a length, that he may but juſt feel it when he jirks up his head; then take a broad piece of leather and put about his neck, and make the ends of it faſt by platting of it, or ſome other way, at the withers, and the middle part before his weaſand, about two handfuls below the throppple, betwixt the leather and his neck: let the martingal paſs ſo, that when at any time he offers to duck, or throw down his head, the caveſſon being placed upon the tender griſle of his noſe, may correct and puniſh him; which will make him bring his

his head to, and form him to an abſolute rein: then trot him abroad, and if you find the reins or martingal grow ſlack, ſtraiten them, for when there is no feeling, there is no virtue.

Of Backing Colts.

BACKING a colt, after he has been exerciſed ſome time morning and evening, and you find him obedient, as directed under the head of colt; then take him to ſome ploughed grounds, the lighter the better, and when you have made him trot a good pace about it in your hand, and thereby taken him from all his wantonneſs; ſee whether your tackling be firm and good, and every thing in it's true and proper place; when having one ſtay to his head, and governing the chafing rein, you may take his back, yet not ſuddenly but by degrees, with divers heavings, and half riſings, which if he endure patiently, then ſettle yourſelf; but if he ſhrink and diſlike, then forbear to mount, and chaſe him about again, and then offer to mount, and and do this till he be willing to receive you.

After you are ſettled, receive your ſtirrups, and cheriſh him, put your toes forward, let him that ſtays his head lead him forwards half a dozen paces, then cheriſh him again, ſhake and move yourſelf on the ſaddle, then let the ſtayer of his head, remove his hand a little from the caveſon, as you thruſt your toes forward, let him move him forward with his rein, till you have made him apprehend your own motion of the body, and foot, which muſt go equally together, and with ſpirit alſo that he will go forward without the other's aſſiſtance, and ſtay upon the reſtraint of your own hands; then cheriſh him, and give graſs, and bread to eat, alight from his back, mount and unmount twice or thrice together, ever mixing them with cheriſhings, thus exerciſe him, till he be made perfect in going forwards,

wards and ſtanding ſtill at pleaſure: this being done, the long rein may be laid aſide, and the band about the neck, and only uſe the trenches and caveſſon with the martingal, and let the groom lead the way before, or another horſe going only ſtrait forwards, and make him ſtand ſtill when you pleaſe, which will ſoon be effected by trotting after another horſe, ſometimes equally with him, ſometimes before, ſo that he fix upon no certainty but your own pleaſure, and be ſure to have regard to the well carriage of his neck, and head, and as the martingal ſlackens, ſo ſtraighten it from time to time.

Of HORSES.

A HORSE is a four-footed animal, of great uſe to mankind, eſpecially in the country; this creature being by nature valiant, ſtrong, and nimble, above all other beaſts, moſt able and apt to endure the extremeſt labours, the moiſt quality of his compoſition being ſuch, that neither extreme heat dries up his ſtrength, nor the violence of the cold freezes the warm temper of his moving ſpirits: He is moſt gentle and loving to man, apt to be taught, and not forgetful when an impreſſion is fixed in his brain, being watchful above all other beaſts, and will endure his labour with the moſt empty ſtomach. He is naturally given to much cleanlineſs, and has an excellent ſcent, and not ſo much as to offend any man with his ill ſavours.

Now for his ſhapes in general; the uſual character is, that he muſt have the eyes and joints of an ox, the ſtrength and foot of a mule, the hoofs and thighs of an aſs, the throat and neck of a wolf, the ear and tail of a fox, the breaſt and hair of a woman, the boldneſs of a lion, the ſhape and quick-ſightedneſs of a ſerpent, the face of a cat, the lightneſs and nimbleneſs of a hare, a high pace, a deliberate trot, a pleaſant gallop, a ſwift running,

running, a rebounding leap, and to be preſent, and be quick in hand.

As to his colours, the beſt are the brown bay, dapple grey, roan, bright bay, black with a white near foot behind, white fore-foot before, white ſtar; cheſnut or ſorrel with any of theſe marks, or dun with a black liſt.

But to return to the more particular ſhapes of a horſe, and ſo ſet them in view in the comlieſt manner, it is required that the hoof be black, ſmooth, large, dry, round, and hollow; the paſterns ſtrait and upright, fetlocks ſhort; the legs ſtrait and flat, called alſo, laſh-legged; the knees bony, lean, and round; the neck long, high reared, and great towards the breaſt; the breaſt large and round; the ears long, ſharp, ſmall, and upright; the forehead lean and large; the eyes great, full, and black; the brows well filled, and ſhooting outwards; the jaws ſlender and lean, wide and open; the mouth great; the head large and lean, like to a ſheep; the mane thin and large; the withers ſharp and pointed; the back ſhort, even, plain, and double chined; the ſides and ribs deep, large, and bearing out like the cover of a trunk, and cloſe ſhut at the huckle bone; the belly long and great, but hid under the ribs; the flanks full, but yet gaunt; the rump round, plain, and broad, with a large ſpace between the buttocks; the thighs long and large, with well faſhioned bones, and thoſe fleſhy; the hams dry and ſtrait; the truncheon ſmall, long, well ſet on, and well couched; the train long, not too thick, and falling to the ground; the yard and ſtones ſmall; and he ſhould be well riſen before. We will conclude with the deſcription of a famous horſeman, in few words.

The horſe ſhould have a broad forehead, a great eye, a lean head; thin, ſlender, lean, wide jaws; a long, high, rearing neck; rearing withers; a broad

deep

deep cheſt and body, upright paſterns, and narrow hoofs.

There are very many things relating to a horſe, and very neceſſary to be known, which will be found under their proper articles; only there are a few which are not ſo conveniently reducible under ſuch heads, which muſt have room here.

To begin with turning a horſe to graſs: you ought, eight or nine days before you do it, to take blood of him; next day after, give him the drink called, *diapente*, and in a day or two after his drink, abate of his cloaths by degrees, before you turn him out, leſt by doing them on a ſudden he ſhould take cold; and curry him not at all after his cloaths are taken off, but let him ſtand in his duſt, for that will keep him warm; neither is it proper to put him out till the middle of *May*, at ſooneſt, for till that time graſs will not have bite enough; and let the day be warm, ſun-ſhine, and about ten o'clock, for horſes pampered in ſtables and kept cloſe, will be very ſubject to take cold.

To take him up from graſs, he muſt be very dry, elſe he will be ſubject to be ſcabby; and that not later than *Bartholomew-tide*, when the ſeaſon begins to let cold dews fall, that cauſe much harm to your horſe; and then alſo the heart of the graſs begins to fail, inſomuch, that the graſs which he then feeds upon breeds no good nouriſhment, but groſs, phlegmatic, and cold humours, which putrify and corrupt the blood; and take him up very quickly, for fear of melting his greaſe, his fat gotten at graſs being very tender: then a day or two after he is in the ſtable, let him be ſhod, let blood, and drenched, which will prevent the ſtaggers, yellows, and the like diſtempers, occaſioned by the gall and ſpleen, which the heart and ſtrength of the graſs, through the rankneſs of the blood, engenders in the body.

But the curious, after they have taken the horſe into

into the ſtable, before they either blood or drench him, in a hot, ſun-ſhining day take him out into a convenient place, and there trim him; and then taking ordinary waſhing ſoap, anoint his head and every part of him with it all over, having care that none gets into his eyes and ears; then they waſh him very well all over with warm water, and wipe him with a warm linnen cloth, and afterwards rub him dry with woollen cloths; then ſoap him all over again, eſpecially his mane and tail, and waſh him very clean with back lee, with a wiſp of woollen cloth, and when they have ſufficiently cleanſed him, dry him as before, and lead him into the ſtable, let him be cleanſed with a clean, thin, ſoft cloth.

So much for turning in, and out of graſs. There are two or three things more to be added, that are of ſome ſignificancy in reference to this noble creature; and the firſt is, to make a horſe follow his maſter, and to find him out and challenge him amongſt ever ſo many people.

Take a pound of oatmeal, to which put a quarter of a pound of honey, and half a pound of liquorice, make a little cake thereof, and put into your boſom next to your naked ſkin, then run and labour your ſelf till you ſweat, and ſo rub all your ſweat upon your cake; then keep the horſe faſting a day and a night and give it him to eat, which done, turn him looſe, and he ſhall not only follow you, but alſo hunt and ſeek you out when he has loſt you; and when he comes to you, ſpit in his mouth, anoint his tongue with your ſpittle, and thus doing, he will never forſake you.

Another thing, is to ſhew how to make a horſe look young: take a crooked iron, no bigger than a wheat corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two outermoſt teeth of each ſide the nether chap before, next to the tuſhes where the mark is worn out, then pick it with an awl blade, and

and make the ſhell fine and thin; then with a ſharp ſcraping-iron make all his teeth white and clean; this done, take a fine lancet, and about the hollows of the horſe's eyes which are ſhrunk down, make a little hole only thro' the ſkin, and put in the quill of a raven or crow, and blow the ſkin full of wind; then take the quill out, lay your finger on the hole a little while, and the wind will ſtay in, and he will look as youthful as if he were but ſix years old.

This way of making a horſe look young, is by horſe-courſers called *biſhoping*, and is neceſſary to be known by countrymen and others, not to cheat others with, but to prevent their being cheated themſelves; and therefore they ſhould have great regard to the *Rules for buying horſes*, to which all perſons are referred whom it may concern.

There may be other lawful occaſions, beſides ſervice of war, to prevent a horſe from neighing; for which end, take a liſt of woollen cloth, and tying it faſt in many folds about the midſt of his voice or wind-pipe, and it will do, for it has been often tried and approved. You will likewiſe meet with the ſeveral diſeaſes incident to horſes, under their names, together with the ſeveral methods and preſcriptions for the cures, too long to be here named.

Of HORSE-FEEDERS, *or* GROOMS.

THERE are many obſervations to be made by one engaged in this office, in order to perform it well, eſpecially when he has the care of running-horſes, but we ſhall only mention a few.

1. As to meat or drink, if there be any ſuch, or other nouriſhment that he knows good for a horſe, which yet the beaſt refuſes, you muſt not thruſt it violently upon him, but by gentle enticements win him thereto, tempting him when he is moſt hungry or moſt dry; if he get but a bit at a time, he will ſoon increaſe to a greater quantity. Ever

Ever let him have leſs than he deſires; and that he may be brought the ſooner to it, mix the meat he loves beſt with that he loves worſt, till both be alike familiar, ſo ſhall he be a ſtranger to nothing that is good and wholeſome.

2. If he finds his horſe ſubject to ſtiffneſs and lameneſs to the ſurbate, or to tenderneſs of feet, then he ſhould give him his heat upon ſmooth carpet earth, or forbear ſtrong grounds, hard high-ways, croſs-ruts and furrows, till extremity compel him.

3. For the condition of a horſe's body, he muſt account that the ſtrongeſt ſtate which is the higheſt and leſt of fleſh, ſo it be good, hard, without inward foulfulneſs, to be the beſt and moſt proper for the performing of matches: and herein you muſt conſider, firſt, the ſhape of a horſe's body, there being ſome that are round, plump, and cloſe knit together, which will appear fat and well ſhaped, when they are lean and in poverty; while others that are raw-boned, ſlender, and looſe knit, will appear lean and deformed, when they are fat, foul, and full of groſs humours.

So likewiſe for their inclinations; for ſome horſes at the firſt, feed outwardly, and carry a thick rib, when they are inwardly as lean as may be; whereas others appear lean to the eye, when they are only greaſe.

In which caſe the feeder has two helps to advantage his knowledge, the outward, and the inward one.

4. The firſt is, the outward handling and feeling the horſe's body all over his ribs, but particularly upon his ſhort and hindermoſt ribs, and if his fleſh generally handle ſoft and looſe, and the fingers ſink therein as in down, he is foul without all queſtion; but if it be hard and firm, and only ſoft upon the hindermoſt rib, he has greaſe aud foul matter within him, which muſt be voided whatever comes of it. And for the inward help, that is only ſharp exerciſe, and ſtrong ſcouring, the firſt to diſſolve, and the latter to bring it away.

5. It is the feeder's buſineſs to obſerve the horſe's ſtones, for if they hang downwards, or low from his body he is out of luſt and heat, and is either ſick of greaſe or other foul humours; but in caſe they lie cloſe truſſed up, and hid in a ſmall room, then he is healthful, and in good plight.

6. As to his limbs, the feeder or groom muſt ever before he runs any match or ſore heat, bathe his legs, from the knees and gambrels downwards, either with clarified dogs greaſe, (which is the beſt) or trotter oil, that is next to it, or elſe the beſt hog's greaſe, which is ſufficient, and work it in well with his hands, not with fire, for what he gets not in the firſt night, will be got in the next morning, and what is not got in then, will be got in when he comes to uncloath at the end of the courſe; ſo that the ointment need be uſed but once, but the rubbing as often as there is opportunity.

7. The feeder may in any of the latter fortnight's of a running horſe's feeding, if he finds him clear, and his greaſe conſumed, about ſix in the evening, give him water in a reaſonable quantity, made luke-warm, keeping him faſting an hour after: alſo, if through the unſeaſonableneſs of the weather you cannot water him abroad, then at your watering hours you are to do it in the houſe, with warm water, and an handful of wheat-meal, bran, or oatmeal, finely powdered, (which laſt is the beſt) put into the water, which is very wholeſome.

8. The rider is farther to note, that if the ground whereon the horſe is to run his match, be dangerous, and apt for bad accidents, as ſtrains, over-reaches, ſinew-bruiſes, and the like, that then he is not bound to give him his heats thereon, but having made him acquainted with the nature thereof, let him take part of the courſe, as a mile, two, or three, according to the goodneſs of the ground, and ſo run him forth again, (which are called turning-heats) provided always he end his heat

heat at the weighing-poſt, and make not his courſe leſs, but more in quantity than that he muſt run.

If for ſome ſpecial cauſes he like no part of the courſe, he may often but not ever, give his heat upon any other ground about any ſpacious and large field, where the horſe may lay down his body and run at pleaſure.

9. He muſt have ſpecial regard to all airings, breathings, and other exerciſes whatever; to the ſweating of the horſe, and the occaſion, as if he ſweat on little or no occaſion, as walking a foot-pace, ſtanding ſtill in the ſtable, and the like; this ſhews that the horſe is faint, foul fed, and wants exerciſe: But if upon good occaſions, as ſtrong heats, great labour, and the like, he ſweat, and it is a white froth like ſoap-ſuds, he is inwardly foul, and alſo wants exerciſe: again, if the ſweat be black, and as it were only water thrown upon him, without any frothineſs, then he is cleanſed, and in good luſt, and good caſe, and may be rid without any danger.

10. And laſtly, he ſhould obſerve his hair in general, but eſpecially on his neck, and thoſe parts that are uncovered, for if they lie ſleek, ſmooth, and cloſe, holding the beauty of their natural colour, the horſe is in good caſe; but if rough and ſtaring, or diſcoloured, he muſt be inwardly cold at heart, and wants both cloaths and warm keeping.

Of Horse Shoes.

Of theſe there are ſeveral ſorts: 1. That called the planch-ſhoe, or pancelet, which makes a good foot, and a bad leg, by reaſon it cauſes the foot to grow beyond the meaſure of the leg; tho' for a weak heel 'tis exceeding good, and will laſt longer than any ſhoe, being borrowed from the moil, that has weak heels and fruſhes, to keep the feet from ſtones and gravel.

2. Shoes with calkins, which tho' they be intended to ſecure the horſe from ſliding, yet they do him more harm than good, in that he cannot tread evenly upon the

the ground, whereby many times he wrenches his foot, or ſtrains ſome ſinews, more eſpecially upon ſtony ways, where the ſtones will not ſuffer his calkins to enter, the foot ſlips with more violence; tho' ſome do not think a horſe well ſhod unleſs all his ſhoes be made with calkins, either ſingle or double; however the double ones are leſs hurtful, for he will tread evener with them than with ſingle calkins, but they muſt not be over long, or ſharp pointed, but rather ſhort and flat.

3. There are ſhoes for rings, which were firſt invented to make a horſe lift his feet up high, tho' ſuch ſhoes are more painful than helpful, and 'tis an unhandſome ſight: this defect is incident to moſt horſes that have not ſound hoofs, for tender feet fear to touch the ground that is hard: but what is intended for a remedy, proves a prejudice to the horſe, by adding high calkins, or elſe theſe rings to his ſhoes, for by that means he is made to have weaker heels than before.

4. Shoes with ſwelling welts, or borders round about them, are uſed in *Germany*, *&c.* which being higher than the heads of the nails, ſave them from wearing; and theſe are the beſt laſting ſhoes, if made of well-tempered ſtuff, for they wear equally in all parts, and the horſe treads equally upon them.

5. Others that uſe to paſs mountains where ſmiths are not ſo eaſily to be met with, carry ſhoes about them with vices, whereby they faſten them to the horſe's hoof without the help of the hammer or nail, notwithſtanding 'tis more for ſhew than any good ſervice; for tho' this ſort of ſhoe may ſave his feet from ſtones, yet it ſo pinches his hoof, that he goes with pain, and perhaps injures it more than the ſtones do: therefore upon ſuch emergent occaſions, 'tis better to make uſe of a joint-ſhoe, which is made of two pieces, with a flat rivet-nail joining them together in the toe,

ſo

ſo that you may make it both wide and narrow to ſerve any foot.

6. The pattern-ſhoe, is neceſſary for a horſe that is burnt in the hip, ſtifle, or ſhoulder, which will cauſe him to bear upon that leg the grief is on, and conſequently uſe it the better.

7. A ſhoe proper for flat feet

8. The panton, or pantable-ſhoe, which opens the heels, and helps hoof-binding.

Theſe are of admirable uſe, in regard that they never ſhift upon the feet, and continue firm in one place.

9. And laſtly, the half panton ſhoe.

Of Horse Racing.

A diverſion more uſed in *England* than in all the world beſide. Horſes for this uſe ſhould be as light as poſſible, large, long, but well ſhaped; with a ſhort back, long ſides, and a little long-legged, and narrow-breaſted, for ſuch will gallop the lighter and nimbler, and run the faſter. *Soleyſel* ſays, he ſhould be ſomewhat long bodied, nervous, of great mettle, good wind, good appetite, very ſwift, and ſenſible of the ſpurs; that he ought to be of an *Engliſh* breed, or *barb*, of a little ſize, with pretty ſmall legs, but the back ſinews a good diſtance from the bone, ſhort-jointed, and have neat, well-ſhaped feet.

The excellent breed we have of horſes, for *racing* in our own country, though through ſeveral abuſes they have been unfortunately miſchievous to a great many perſons, yet if rightly regulated and made uſe of, might be very advantageous, as well as pleaſant and diverting to men of quality; and that is by having *Plates* run for at ſeveral times, and in ſeveral countries, by which we may come exactly to know the ſpeed, wind, force, and heart of every horſe that runs, which directs us infallibly in our choice, when we would furniſh our ſelves for hunting, breeding, road, and the like; whereas without

ſuch trials, we muſt ſtand to the hazard, and not be at any certainty to meet with good ones. A horſe may travel well, hunt well, and the like, and yet when he comes to be preſſed hard, and forced to the extremity of what he can do, may not prove good at heart; and more particularly, ſome racers have been only beaten by their hearts ſinking in them (that have wanted neither wind nor ſpeed) when they come to be hard preſſed.

It were indeed to be wiſhed that our Nobility and Gentry would not make ſo much a trade of racing; and when they run only for plates, or their matches, that they would do it for no more than may be loſt without damaging their eſtates; but to run ſo great a ſum, that the Loſs cannot be well born, and conſequently endeavouring to win the ſame, if not more back again, it draws them into vaſt expence, by way of preparation for revenge, the conſequences of which need not be mentioned. On the other hand, if a perſon proves ſucceſsful, he is but too apt to fancy he ſhall prove ſo again, and ſets up for a brother of the *ſpur*, and runs ſo faſt, that ſometimes neither eſtate nor friends can keep along with him, and ſo turns his diverſion into misfortunes, a practice contrary to the good œconomy deſigned in the whole courſe of this work.

As to the method of ordering *running-horſes*, or what is called *keeping*, ſince Noblemen and Gentlemen will do ſo, they will find what is proper to be done in that reſpect under the article *Running-Horſes*, and therefore we will only here ſuppoſe a horſe ſet to run for a *plate*, and that the hour of ſtarting is at hand, when the drum beats or the trumpets ſound, according to the cuſtom of the place where you run, to give notice for ſtripping and weighing; be ſure in the firſt place, to have your ſtomach empty, only take ſomething to keep out the wind, and to ſtrengthen you:

you : if you are light, that you muſt carry weight, let it be equally quilted in your waiſtcoat ; but it is better if you are juſt weight, for then you have no more to do than to dreſs you, according to your own fancy ; your cloaths ſhould be of coloured ſilk, or of white holland, as being very advantageous to the ſpectators ; your waiſtcoat and drawers muſt be made cloſe to your body, and on your head a little cap tied on ; let your boots be gartered up faſt, and your ſpurs muſt be of good mettal ; then mount and come to the ſtarting-place, where going off briſkly or gently, as occaſion requires, make your horſe perform the courſe or heat, according to your intended deſign, particularly, if you would win the ſame, and that your horſe excels in goodneſs more than ſpeed, ſtart him off roundly, and run him to the very top of what he can do, during the whole courſe or heat ; and by that means, if the horſe you run againſt be not ſo good at the bottom, tho' he has more ſpeed, you ſhall beat him, becauſe he will run off it a great way before he comes to the end. But on the contrary, if your horſe's talent be ſpeed, all that you can do is to wait upon the other horſe, and keep behind till you come almoſt to the ſtand, and then endeavour to give a looſe by him : ſometimes when you are to run more heats than one, it will be your policy to loſe a heat ; and in that caſe you muſt, for the eaſing and ſafeguard of your horſe, lie behind as much as you can, provided you bring him in within diſtance.

The poſture to be obſerved, is that you place yourſelf upon your twiſt, with your knees firm, and your ſtirrups juſt at ſuch a length, that your feet, when they are thruſt home in them, you can raiſe yourſelf a little in the ſaddle, for your legs, without that allowance, will not be firm when you come to run ; the counter-poiſe of your body muſt be forward, to facilitate your horſe's running, and

your elbows muſt be cloſe to your body; be ſure, above all things, that you do not incommode your horſe by ſwagging this or that way, as ſome do, for ſince weight is a great matter in running, and that a troubleſome rider is as bad as ſo much more weight, there is no need to ſay how neceſſary it is to take great care of your ſeat and hand; you muſt therefore beware of holding yourſelf by the bridle, or of jobbing your horſe's mouth upon any occaſion; you muſt take your right rein in the ſame hand, holding up *horſe*, *&c.* as you find it neceſſary, and every now and then remove the bridle in his mouth. But theſe things are beſt learned by experience and practice.

A plate being run for by heats, every man that rides muſt be juſt weight at ſtarting, in great ſcales for that purpoſe, and at the end of the ſame heat, for if you want of your weight at coming in, you ſhall loſe your heat, tho' you are the firſt horſe: you have half an hour between the firſt and ſecond, to rub your horſes, and at the warning of the drum and trumpet again, you mount, *&c.* as before, and ſo till all is done, which is three, and ſometimes three heats and a courſe.

Nothing need be ſaid of the ceremonies relating to the judges, and the articles by which *plate-races* and *matches* are regulated, ſince they are ſettled according to the different cuſtoms of the places where you run.

If you do not breed *racers* yourſelf, be ſure you buy no horſe that has not extraordinary good blood in his veins for the charge of keeping is great, and a good one eats no more than a bad, and requires no more attendance; ſome to ſave twenty or thirty guineas in the price of a young *horſe*, have loſt hundreds by him afterwards.

A *horſe* that you have tried once or twice at a twelve-ſtone plate, you may be ſure will make an extraordinary good hunter: and you are to obſerve, that the

the poſture, manner of riding, &c. is the ſame in a match as in a plate-race, only that there being but a ſingle courſe to be run, you muſt puſh for all at that one time; whereas when there are ſeveral heats, there is more ſaving, and variety of play.

Of Hunting Horses.

A Horse deſigned for this manly exerciſe, his ſhape ſhould be generally ſtrong and well knit together, making equal proportions; for you are to obſerve, that which has unequal ſhapes ſhew weakneſs, ſo equal ones ſhew ſtrength and durance; and what we call unequal, are a great head and a little neck; a big body, and a thick buttock; a large limb to a little foot, &c. whereas he ſhould have a large and lean head, wide noſtrils, open channelled, a big weaſand, and ſtrait wind-pipe.

To order the *hunting-horſe*, while he is at reſt, let him have all the quietneſs that may be; let him have much meat, much litter, much dreſſing, and water even by him; let him ſleep as long as he pleaſes; keep him to dung rather ſoft than hard, and look that it be well coloured, and bright, for darkneſs ſhews greaſe, redneſs, and inward heat: and after his uſual ſcourings, let him have exerciſes, and maſhes of ſweet malt, or let bread, or clean beans, or beans and wheat mixed together, be his beſt food, and beans and oats the moſt ordinary.

But Sir *Robert Charnock*'s way of hunting in buck-ſeaſon, was, never to take his horſe up into the ſtable during the ſeaſon, but he hunted him upon graſs, only allowing him as many oats as he would well eat; and this he approved of as a very good way, by reaſon, if there be any molten greaſe within him, which violent hunting may raiſe up, this going to graſs will purge it out: It is affirmed, the ſame gentleman has rid his horſe three times in a week during the ſeaſon, and

never found any inconveniency, but rather good from it, ſo that care be taken, to turn the horſe out very cool.

You may furniſh yourſelf with a horſe for hunting at ſome of our fairs, which ſhould have, as near as can be, the following ſhapes.

A *head* lean, large, and long; a *chaul* thin, and open ears, ſmall, and pricked; or, if they be ſomewhat long, provided they ſtand upright, like thoſe of a fox, it is uſually a ſign of mettle and toughneſs.

His *forehead* long and broad, not flat, and, as it is uſually termed hare-faced, riſing in the midſt like that of a hare, the feather being placed above the top of his eye; the contrary being thought by ſome to betoken blindneſs.

His eyes full, large, and bright; his noſtrils wide and red within, for an open noſtril is a ſign of a good wind.

His *mouth* large, deep in the wikes and hairy; his *throppple*, *weaſand* or *wind-pipe* big, looſe, and ſtrait, when he is reined in with the bridle; for if, when he bridles, it bends like a bow, (which is called *cock-throppled*) it very much hinders the free paſſage of his wind.

His *head* muſt be ſo ſet on to his neck, that a ſpace may be felt between his neck and his chaul; for to be bull-necked is uncomely to ſight, and alſo prejudicial to the horſe's wind.

His creſt ſhould be firm, thin, and well-riſen, his neck long, and ſtrait, yet not looſe and pliant, which the northern men term *withy-cragg'd*.

His breaſt ſtrong and broad, his cheſt deep, his chine ſhort, his body large and cloſe ſhut up to the huckle-bone.

His ribs rounk like a barrel, his belly being hid within them.

His fillets large, his buttocks rather oval than broad, being well let down to the gaſcoins, his cambrels upright, and not bending, which ſome call *ſuckle-hogbed*; though ſome look udon this to be a ſign of toughneſs and ſpeed.

His

His legs clean, flat, and ſtrait; his joints ſhort, well knit, and upright, eſpecially betwixt the paſterns and the hoof, having but little hair on his fetlocks; his hoofs black, ſtrong, and hollow, and rather long and narrow, than big and flat.

Laſtly, his mane and tail ſhould be long and thin, rather than thick, which is counted by ſome a mark of dullneſs.

As to marks or colours, tho' they do not abſolutely give teſtimony unto us of a *horſe*'s goodneſs, yet they, as well as his ſhape, do intimate to us, in ſome part, his diſpoſition and qualities: The hair itſelf does often times receive the variation of it's colour, from the different temperature of the ſubject out of which it is produced.

And ſome do not ſcruple to affirm, that where-ever you meet with a *horſe* that has no white about him, eſpecially in his forehead, tho' he be otherwiſe of the beſt reputed colours, as bay, black, ſorrel, he is of a dogged and ſullen diſpoſition, eſpecially if he have a ſmall pink eye, and a narrow face, with a noſe bending like a hawk's bill.

The Age, &c. of a HUNTER.

HAVING procured a *horſe* ſuitable to the former deſcriptions, or your own ſatisfaction at leaſt, and which is ſuppoſed to be already grounded in the fundamentals of this art, being taught ſuch obedience, as that he will readily anſwer to the horſeman's helps and corrections both of the bridle and hand, the voice, the calf of the leg, and the ſpurs, that he knows how to make his way forward, and hath gained a true temper of mouth, and a right placing of his head, and that he hath learned to ſtop, and turn readily; for unleſs he has been perfectly taught theſe things, he can never proceed effectually.

The *horſe* being thus prepared, ſhould be five years

old, and well way'd before you begin to hunt him; for altho' it is cuſtomary with ſome to hunt at four years old, yet at that age his joints not being well knit, nor he attained to his beſt ſtrength and courage, he is unable to perform any work of ſpeed and toughneſs, and will be in great danger of ſtrains, and other maladies, and alſo a daunting of his ſpirit, and abating his natural courage.

Your *horſe* being full five, you may, if you pleaſe, put him to graſs, from the middle of *May* till *Bartholomew-tide*, for then the ſeaſon will be ſo hot, it will not be convenient to work him.

Bartholomew-tide being now come, and the pride and ſtrength of the graſs nipped by the ſevere froſts and cold dews, ſo that the nouriſhment of it turns to raw crudities, and the coldneſs of the night abates as much of his fleſh and luſt as he gets in a day: take him from graſs while his coat lies ſmooth and ſleek.

Having brought him home, let your groom ſet him up that night in ſome ſecure and ſpacious houſe, where he may evacuate his body, and ſo be brought to warmer keeping by degrees, and the next day ſtable him.

It is indeed held as a general rule, among the generality of grooms, not to cloath nor dreſs their horſes till two or three days after they have ſtabled them, (tho' there is little reaſon for it but cuſtom); yet this cuſtom conducing little to either the advantage or prejudice of the horſe, I ſhall leave every one to their own fancies.

But as to the cuſtom of giving the horſe wheat-ſtraw, to take up his belly, (which is alſo generally uſed by grooms at the firſt taking up and houſing a horſe) ſome perſons very much diſapprove of, for they ſay, that the nature of a horſe being hot and dry, if he be fed with ſtraw, which is ſo likewiſe, it would ſtraiten his guts, and cauſe an inflammation of his liver, and by that means diſtemper his blood; and beſides, it would

would make his body ſo coſtive, that it would cauſe a retention of nature, and make him dung with great pain and difficulty; whereas full feeding would expel the excrements, according to the true intention and inclination of nature.

Therefore let moderate airing, warm cloathing, good old hay, and old corn ſupply the place of wheat-ſtraw. See SHOEING or Page 24.

The firſt fortnight's DIET *for a* HUNTING HORSE; *or the ordering of a* HUNTER; *for the firſt fortnight.*

Your *horſe* being ſuppoſed to have evacuated all his graſs, and his ſhoes ſo well ſettled to his feet, that he may be fit to be ridden abroad without danger: I ſhall now, in a more particular manner, direct an unexperienced groom how he ought to proceed to order his horſe according to art.

Firſt, he ought to viſit his horſe early in the morning, to wit, by five o'clock in ſummer, and ſix in winter; and having put up his litter under his ſtall, and made clean his ſtables, to feel his ribs, his chaul, and his flank, they being the principal ſigns by which he muſt learn to judge of the good or ill ſtate of a horſe's body.

He ought to lay his hands on his ſhort ribs, near the flank, and if his fat feels to be exceeding ſoft and tender, and to yield as it were under his hand, then he may be confident it is unſound, and that the leaſt violent labour or travel will diſſolve it; which being diſſolved before it be hardened by good diet, if it be not then removed by ſcouring, the fat or greaſe belonging to the outward parts of the body will fall down into his heels, and ſo cauſe goutineſs and ſwelling.

After, by feeling on his ribs, he has found his fat ſoft and unſound, then let him feel his chaul; and if he finds any fleſhy ſubſtance, or great round kernels or knots, he may be aſſured that as his outward fat has been unſound, ſo inwardly he is full of glut, and pur-

ſive, by means of groſs humours cleaving to the hollow places of his lungs, *&c.*

This fat is to be enſeamed and hardened by moderate exerciſe, warm cloathing, and gentle phyſick, to cleanſe away his inward glut.

The ſame obſervations muſt be made from the flank, which will always be found to correſpond with his ribs and chaul, for till it is drawn, it will feel thick to your gripe, but when he is enſeamed you will perceive nothing but two thin ſkins; and by theſe three obſervations of the ribs, flank and chaps, you may at any time paſs an indifferent judgment of the horſe's good or bad condition.

Having made theſe remarks on your horſe's ſtate and condition of body, then ſift a handful or two (but not more) of good old oats, and give them to him to preſerve his ſtomach from cold humours which might oppreſs it by drinking faſting, and likewiſe to make him drink the better.

When he hath eaten them, pull off his collar, and rub his head, face, ears, and nape of the neck, with a clean rubbing-cloth made of hemp, for it is ſovereign for the head, and diſſolves all groſs and filthy humours.

Then take a ſnaffle, and waſh it in clean water, and put it on his head, drawing the rein thro' the headſtall to prevent his ſlipping it over his head, and ſo tie him up to the rack, and dreſs him thus:

Firſt, take a curry-comb, ſuitable to your horſe's ſkin, in your right hand; that is, if the coat of your horſe be ſhort and ſmooth, then muſt the curry-comb be blunt; but if it be long and rough, then the teeth muſt be long and ſharp: ſtanding with your face oppoſite the horſe's, hold the left cheek of the head-ſtall in your left-hand, and curry him with a good hand from the root of his ears, all along his neck to his ſhoulders; then go over all his body with a more moderate

derate hand; then curry his buttocks down to the hinder cambrel with a hard hand again; then change your hand, and laying your right arm over his back, join your right ſide to his left, and ſo curry him gently from the top of his withers to the lower part of his ſhoulder, every now and then fetching your ſtroke over the left ſide of his breaſt, and ſo curry him down to the knee, but no farther.

Then curry him all under his belly, near his fore-bowels, and in a word, all over very well, his legs under the knees and cambrels only excepted; and as you dreſs his left ſide, ſo muſt you the right alſo.

In doing this, take notice where your horſe keeps a rigling up and down, biting the rack-ſtaffs, and now and then offering to ſnap at you, or lifting up his leg to ſtrike at you, when you are currying him: if he do, it is an apparent ſign, that the roughneſs of the comb diſpleaſes him, and therefore the teeth of it is to be filed more blunt; but if you perceive he plays theſe or ſuch like tricks thro' wantonneſs, and the pleaſure he takes in the friction, then you ſhould every now and then correct him with your whip gently for his wagiſhneſs.

This currying is only to raiſe the duſt. therefore, after the horſe has been thus curried, take either an horſe-tail nailed to an handle, or a clean duſting cloth of cotton, and with it ſtrike off the looſe duſt that the curry-comb has raiſed.

Then dreſs him all over with the *French* bruſh, both head, body, and legs, to the very fetlocks, obſerving always to cleanſe the bruſh from the filth it gathers from the bottom of the hair, by rubbing it on the curry-comb; then duſt the horſe again the ſecond time.

Then having wetted your hand in water, rub his body all over, and, as near as you can, leave no looſe hairs behind, and with your hands wet, pick, and cleanſe his eyes, ears, and noſtrils, ſheath, cods and tuel, and ſo rub him till he is as dry as at firſt.

Then take an hair patch, and rub his body all over, but eſpecially his fore-bowels under his belly, his flank, and between his hinder thighs : and, in the laſt place, wipe him over with a fine white linen rubber.

When you have thus dreſſed him, take a large ſaddle cloth (made on purpoſe) that may reach down to the ſpurring-place, and lap it about his body ; then clap on his ſaddle, and throw a cloth over him, that he may not catch cold.

Then twiſt two ropes of ſtraw very hard together, and with them rub and chafe his legs from the knees and cambrels downwards to the ground, picking his fetlock joints, with your hands, from duſt, filth, and ſcabs : then take another hair patch, kept on purpoſe for his legs, (for you muſt have two) and with it rub and dreſs his legs alſo.

And while you are dreſſing your *horſe*, let him not ſtand naked, ſo that his body be expoſed to the penetration of the air ; but when he is ſtripped, do your buſineſs roundly, without any intermiſſion, till you have ſaddled him, and thrown his cloth over him.

When you have done this, pick his feet clean with an iron picker, comb down his mane and tail with a wet mane-comb, then ſpurt ſome beer in his mouth, and ſo draw him out of the ſtable.

Then mount him, rake or walk him either to ſome running river or freſh ſpring a mile or two diſtant from the ſtable, and there let him drink about half his draught at firſt, to prevent raw crudities ariſing in his ſtomach.

After he has drank, bring him calmly out of the water, and ride him gently for a while ; for nothing is more unbecoming a horſeman than to put his horſe upon a ſwift gallop as ſoon as he comes out of the water, for theſe three reaſons.

1. He does not only hazard the breaking of his wind, but aſſuredly hazards the incording or burſting him.

2. It

2. It begets in him an ill habit of running away as ſoon as he has done drinking.

3. The foreſight he has of ſuch violent exerciſe, makes him oftentimes refuſe to quench his thirſt, and therefore walk him a little way, and then put him into a gentle gallop for five or ſix ſcore paces, and give him wind; and after he has been raked a pretty while, ſhew him the water again, and let him drink as much as he will, and then gallop him again, and repeat this till he will drink no more; but be ſure to obſerve always, that you gallop him not ſo much as to chafe or ſweat him,

Here take notice, that in his gallopping after water, (after the firſt week's enſeaming) if ſometimes you give him a watering-courſe ſharply of twelve, or twenty ſcore paces, (according as you find your horſe) it will quench his ſpirit, and cauſe him to gallop more pleaſantly, and teach him to manage his limbs more nimbly, and to ſtretch forth his body largely.

When your horſe has done drinking, then rake him to the top of an hill, (if there be one near the watering-place) for there, in a morning, the air is pureſt; or elſe to ſome ſuch place, where he may gain the moſt advantage both by ſun and air, and there air him a foot-pace for an hour, or longer as you in your judgment ſhall think fit, for the ſtate of his body, and then ride him home.

During the time of your horſe's airing, you may eaſily perceive ſeveral tokens of your horſe's ſatisfaction, and the pleaſure that he takes in this exerciſe.

For he will gape, yawn, and as it were ſhrug his body.

If he offer to ſtand ſtill to dung or ſtale, which his airing will provoke, be ſure give him leave; as alſo to ſtare about, neigh, or liſten after any noiſe.

Theſe airings are advantageous to the horſe on ſeveral accounts.

1. It

1. It purifies the blood (if the air be clear and pure); it purges the body of many groſs and ſuffocating humours, and ſo hardens and enſeams the horſe's fat, that it is not near ſo liable to be diſſolved by ordinary exerciſe.

2. It teaches him how to let his wind rake, and equally keep time with the other actions and motions of his body.

3. It is of great advantage, both to hunters and gallopers, which are apt to loſe their ſtomachs thro' exceſs or want of exerciſe, for the ſharpneſs of the air will drive the horſe's natural heat from the outward parts to the inward, which heat by furthering concoction creates appetite, and provokes the ſtomach.

4. It increaſes luſt and courage in the horſe, provided he be not aired too early.

When you are returned from airing, and are diſmounted, lead the horſe on the ſtraw, which ſhould always lie before the ſtable-door, and there by whiſtling and ſtirring up the litter under his belly, you will provoke him to ſtale, which he will be brought to do with a little practice, and it will be advantageous to the health of the horſe, and a means of keeping the ſtable cleaner: then lead him into his ſtall, (having firſt been well littered); then tie up his head to the empty rack, take off the ſaddle, rub his body and legs all over with the *freſh-bruſh*, then with the *hair-patch*, and laſt of all with the *woollen-cloth*.

Then clothe him with a linen-cloth next to his body, and over that a canvaſs-cloth, and both made fit for him, to cover his breaſt, and to come pretty low down to his legs, which is the *Turkiſh* way of clothing, who (as the Duke of *Newcaſtle* ſays) are the moſt curious people in the world in keeping their horſes.

Then put over the before-mentioned a body-cloth of ſix or eight ſtraps, which is better than a ſurcingle and

and pad-ſtuft with whiſps, becauſe this keeps his belly in ſhape, and is not ſo ſubject to hurt him.

Now theſe cloths will be ſufficient for him at his firſt ſtabling, becauſe being inured to the cold, he will not be ſo apt to take cold, the weather being indifferently warm; but when ſharp weather comes on, and you find his hair riſe about thoſe parts that are unclothed, as neck, gaſcoins, &c. then add another cloth, which ought to be of woollen; and for any horſe bred under the climate, and kept only for ordinary hunting, this clothing will be ſufficient.

Having already given directions as to the clothing the horſe, I ſhall only add this one general rule; that a rough coat is a token of want of cloaths, and a ſmooth coat of cloathing ſufficient; therefore if notwithſtanding what cloaths you have given him, his coat ſtill ſtares, you muſt add more cloaths till it lie.

But if when he has been in keeping ſome time, you perceive him apt to ſweat in the night, it is a ſign he is over-fed, and wants exerciſe; but if he ſweat at his firſt coming from graſs, then there is reaſon to add rather than diminiſh the cloath before directed for him at his firſt houſing; for it proceeds from the foul humours that oppreſs nature, and when they are evacuated by exerciſe, nature will ceaſe working, and he will continue in a temperate ſtate of body all the year after.

When you have cloathed him up, pick his feet clean with an iron picker, and waſh his hoofs clean with a ſpunge dipped in clean water, and dry them with ſtraw or a linen cloth, then leave him on his ſnaffle for an hour or more, which will aſſiſt his appetite.

Then viſit him again, duſt a handful of hay, and let the horſe teaze it out of your hand, till he hath eaten it; then pull off his bridle, and rub his head and neck clean with your hempen-cloth; pull his ears and ſtop his noſtrils,

trils, to cauſe him to ſnort, which will bring away the moiſt humours which oppreſs his brain, and then put on his collar, and give him a quartern of oats clean dreſſed in a ſieve, having firſt cleaned his locker or manger with a wiſp of ſtraw and a cloth.

While he is eating his corn, ſweep out your ſtable, and ſee that all things are neat about him; then turn up his cloaths, and rub his fillets, buttocks, and gaſcoins, over with the hair patch, and after that with a woollen cloth; then ſpread a clean flannel fillet cloth over his fillets and buttocks, (which will make his coat lie ſmooth) and turn down his houſing-cloths upon it; then anoint his hoofs round from the cornet to the toe with this ointment.

Take 4 ounces of *Venice turpentine*, 3 ounces of the beſt *roſin*, of bee's wax, 2 ounces, 1 pound of *dog's greaſe*, and half a pint of *train oil*; melt all theſe ingredients together, except the *turpentine*; then take them off the fire, and put in the *turpentine*, ſtirring it till it be well incorporated; then pour it out into an earthen gallipot, and keep it for uſe, but do not cover it till it is cold.

After this, ſtop his feet with cow-dung. If by this time your horſe has eaten his oats with a good ſtomach, ſift him another quartern, and ſo feed him with little and little, while he eats with an appetite; but if you find he fumbles with his corn, give him no more for that time, but always give him his full feeding, for that will keep his body in better ſtate and temper, and increaſe his ſtrength and vigour.

Whereas, on the contrary, to keep your horſe always ſharp-ſet, is the ready way to procure a ſurfeit, if at any time he can come at his fill of provender.

But though you ſhould perceive that he gathers fleſh too faſt upon ſuch home feeding, yet be ſure not to ſtint him for it, but only increaſe his labour, and that will aſſiſt both his ſtrength and wind.

Having

Having done all the things before directed, duſt a pretty quantity of hay, and throw it down to him on his litter, after you have taken it up under him; and then ſhutting up the windows and ſtable-door, leave him till one o'clock in the afternoon; then viſit him again, and rub over his head, neck, fillets, buttocks, and legs as before, with the hair patch and woollen cloth, and then leave him to the time of the evening-watering, which ſhould be about four o'clock in the ſummer, and three in the winter: when having put back his foul litter, and ſwept away that and his dung, dreſs and ſaddle him, as before, mount him and rake him to the water, and when he has drank, gallop him, and air him till you think it time to go home; where you are to order in all points, as to rubbing, feeding, ſtopping his feet, &c. as you did in the morning; and having fed him about ſix o'clock, do not fail to feed him again at nine, and litter him well, and give him hay enough to ſerve him all night; and ſo leave him till the next morning.

After the directions for this one day, ſo muſt you order him for a fortnight, and by that time his fleſh will be ſo hardened, and his wind ſo improved; his mouth will be ſo quickened, and his gallop brought to ſo good a ſtroke, that he will be fit to be put to moderate hunting.

Now during this fortnight's keeping, you are to make ſeveral obſervations, as to the nature and diſpoſition of your horſe, the temper of his body, the courſe of his digeſtion, &c. and to order him accordingly.

I. Whether he be of a churliſh diſpoſition; if ſo, you muſt reclaim him by ſeverity.

If of a gentle, familiar, and loving temper, you muſt engage and win him by kindneſs.

2. You muſt obſerve, whether he be a foul feeder, or of a nice ſtomach; if he be quick at his meat, and retain a good ſtomach, then four times of full feeding

in

in a night and a day are ſufficient; but if he be a ſlender feeder, and ſlow at his meat, then you muſt give him but little at a time, and often, as about every two hours, for freſh meat will draw on his appetite; and you muſt always leave a little meat in his locker, for him to eat at leiſure betwixt his feeding-times; and if at any time you find any left, ſweep it away and give him freſh, and expoſe that to the ſun and air, which will reduce it again to it's firſt ſweetneſs as before it was blown upon.

His ſtomach may alſo be ſharpened by change of meat, as by giving one meal clean oats, and at another oats and ſplit beans, and when you have brought him to eat bread, you may give him another meal of bread; always obſerving to give him oſteneſt that which you find he likes beſt; or you may give him both corn and bread at the ſame time, provided you give him that laſt which he eats beſt, and which is of the beſt digeſtion.

It has been obſerved of ſome horſes, that they are of ſo hot a conſtitution, that they cannot eat without drinking at every bit; and thoſe horſes uſually carry no belly. You muſt let a pail of water ſtand continually before ſuch horſes, or at leaſt give them water at noon, beſides what they have abroad at their ordinary times.

In the next place, you are to obſerve the nature of his digeſtion, whether he retains his food long, which is a ſign of bad digeſtion; or whether he dungs frequently, which if he does, and his dung be looſe and bright, it is a ſign of a good habit of body; but if it be ſeldom and hard, it is a ſign of a dry conſtitution; in order to remedy which, give him once a day a handful or two of oats, well waſhed in good ſtrong *ale*, and this will looſen his body and keep it moiſt; and it will alſo be good for his wind.

The ſecond fortnight's diet for a HUNTING-HORSE.

THE horſe having been ordered for the firſt fortnight, according to the foregoing rules, will be in a pretty good ſtate of body, for the groſs humours in him will be dried up, and his fleſh will begin to be hardened, which you may perceive by feeling his *chaul*, his *ſhort ribs*, and *flank*; for the kernels under his chaps will not feel ſo groſs as they did at firſt, nor will his fleſh on his ſhort ribs feel ſo ſoft and looſe, nor the thin part of his flank ſo thick as at his firſt houſing, ſo that you may now without hazard, venture to hunt him moderately.

The time being now come that he may be hunted, he is to be ordered on his days of reſt, in all points, as to his dreſſing, hours of feeding, watering, *&c.* as in the firſt fortnight before directed; but only ſince his labour is now increaſed, you muſt endeavour to increaſe his ſtrength and courage likewiſe; and this you may effect by adding to his oats a third part of clean old beans, ſpelted on a mill, and allowing him over and above the following bread.

Take two pecks of clean old beans, and one peck of wheat, and let them be ground together, and ſift the meal thro' a meal ſieve of an indifferent fineneſs, and knead it with warm water and good ſtore of yeaſt; then let it lie an hour, or more, to ſwell, which will make the bread the lighter, and have the eaſier and quicker digeſtion; and after it has been well kneaded, make it up into loaves of a peck a piece, which will prevent there being too much cruſt, and prevent it's drying too ſoon; let them be well baked, and ſtand a good while in the oven to ſoak; when they are drawn, turn the bottoms upwards and let them ſtand to cool.

When the bread is a day old, chip away the cruſt, and you may give the horſe ſome, giving him ſometimes bread, ſometimes oats, and ſometimes oats and

ſplit

ſplit beans, according as you find his ſtomach : and this feeding will bring him into as good condition as you need to deſire for ordinary hunting.

The firſt fortnight being expired, and the bread prepared, you ought then to pitch upon a day for his going abroad after the dogs, and the day before you hunt, he muſt always be ordered after this manner.

In the morning proceed in your uſual method as before, only obſerve that day to give him no beans, becauſe they are hard of digeſtion, but give him moſt of bread if you can draw him on to eat it, becauſe it is more nouriſhing than oats ; and after the evening, which ought to be ſomewhat earlier than at other times, give him only a little hay out of your hand, and no more till the next day that he returns from hunting ; and to prevent his eating his litter, or any thing elſe but what you give him, inſtead of a muzzle put on a caveſſon, joined to a head-ſtall of a bridle, lined with leather, for fear of hurting him, and tying it ſo tight as to hinder his eating ; and this will prevent ſickneſs in your horſe, which ſome horſes are incident to when their muzzle is put on, notwithſtanding the invention of the lattice window, ſo much uſed ; but by taking this method, the horſe's noſtrils are at full liberty, and he will not grow ſick.

But as to his corn, give him his meals, both after his watering, and at nine o'clock, and at that time be ſure to litter him well, that he may take his reſt the better that night, and then leave him till morning.

The next morning viſit him early, at about four o'clock, and put a quarter of a peck of clean dreſſed oats into his locker, pouring into it a quart of good ſtrong ale, mixing the oats and ale well together ; then put back his dung and foul litter, and clean the ſtable : but if he will not eat waſhed oats, give him dry, but be ſure not to put any beans to them.

When he has done eating, bridle him, and tie him

up

up to the ring and dreſs him: having dreſſed him, ſaddle him, and throw his cloth over him, and let him ſtand till the hounds are ready to go out.

Take care not to draw the ſaddle-girths too ſtreight till you are ready to mount, leſt that ſhould cauſe him to grow ſick.

Tho' old horſes are generally ſo craſty, that when a groom goes to girt them up hard, they will extend their bodies ſo much by holding their wind, (on purpoſe to gain eaſe after they are girt) that it will ſeem difficult to girt them, but when they let go their wind their bodies fall again.

When the hounds are unkennelled, (which ſhould not be before ſun-riſing) go into the field along with them, and rake your horſe up and down gently till a *hare* is ſtarted; always remembering to let him ſmell to the dung of other horſes, if there be any, which will provoke him to empty himſelf; and ſuffer him to ſtand ſtill till he does ſo; and if there be any dead *frogs*, ruſhes, or the like, ride him upon them, and whiſtle to him, to provoke him to ſtale and empty his bladder.

The *hare* being ſtarted, follow the hounds as the other hunters do; but remembering it to be the firſt time of his hunting, he is not ſo well acquainted with the different ſorts of grounds, as to know how to gallop ſmoothly and with eaſe on them, and for that reaſon you ought not yet to put him to above half his ſpeed, that he may learn to carry a ſtay'd body, and to manage his legs both upon fallows and green ſwarth.

Neither ſhould you gallop him often, or any long time together, for fear of diſcouraging him, and cauſing a diſlike of his exerciſe in him: and take care to croſs fields to the beſt advantage; you ſhould make into the hounds at every default, and ſtill keep your horſe (as much as theſe directions will allow you) within the

cry

cry of the dogs, that he may be uſed to their cry; and by ſo doing, in a very ſhort time he will take ſuch delight and pleaſure in their muſic, that he will be eager to follow them.

And if it happpen that the chace is led over any carpet-ground, or ſandy high-way, on which your horſe may lay out his body ſmoothly, there you may gallop him for a quarter or half a mile, to teach him to lay out his body, to gather up his legs, to lengthen and ſhorten his ſtroke, and according to the different earth he gallops on, as if on *green ſwarth*, *meadow*, *moore*, *heath*, *&c.* then to ſtoop and run more on the ſhoulders; if amongſt *mole-hills*, or over *high-ridges* and *furrows*, then to gallop more roundly or in leſs compaſs, or according to the vulgar phraſe, *two up and two down*, that thereby he may ſtrike his furrow clear, and avoid ſetting his fore-feet in the bottom of it, and by that means fall over; but, by the way, galloping, tho' he ſhould happen to ſet his feet in a furrow, yet carrying his body ſo round, and reſting on the hand in his gallop, would prevent his falling; and to this perfection, nothing but uſe, and ſuch moderate exerciſe, can bring him.

According to theſe directions, you may hunt till about three o'clock in the afternoon, at which time ride him home in a foot-pace, as you came out in the morning; and be ſure that you let him walk out of the field; and as you are going home, conſider whether he hath ſweat a little, (for you muſt not ſweat him much the firſt time) but if not, then gallop him gently on ſome ſkelping earth, till he ſweat at the roots of his ears, a little on his neck, and in his flank; but it muſt be done of his own voluntary motion, without the compulſion of whip or ſpur; and then when he is cool as aforeſaid, have him home and ſtable him, and by no means walk him in hand to cool him, for fear of his cooling too faſt, nor do not waſh him, for fear of cauſing

cauſing an obſtruction of the natural courſe of the humours, and by that means cauſe an inflammation in his legs, which is the original cauſe of the ſcratches.

His ſtall being well littered againſt he comes home, ſet him up, tying his head to the ring with the bridle, and then rub him well down with dry ſtraw all over his head, neck, fore-bowels, belly, flank, buttocks, and legs, and after that rub his body over with a dry cloth, till he has not a wet hair left about him; after you have done, take off his ſaddle, and rub the place where the ſaddle was, dry, in like manner, and cloath him immediately with his ordinary cloaths, leſt he take cold; and if you ſuppoſe him to be very hot, throw a ſpare cloth over him, that he may not cool too faſt, which you may abate when you pleaſe, and ſo let him ſtand on his ſnaffle, two hours or better, now and then ſtirring him in his ſtall with your whip, to prevent him from growing ſtiff in the legs and joints.

When that time is expired, and you think he is thorough cold, draw his bridle, rub his head, pick his feet, from dirt or gravel, and put on his collar, and give him a quart or three pints of ſifted oats, mixt with a handful of clean dreſſed hempſeed; but give him not more than the quantity preſcribed, for fear of taking away his ſtomach, which will be very much weakened through the heat of his body, and want of water.

Then take off the ſpare cloth, (if it has not been done before) for fear of keeping him hot too long, and when he has eaten his corn, throw a pretty quantity of hay, clean duſted, on his litter, and let him reſt two or three hours, or thereabouts.

Then having prepared him a good maſh, made of half a peck of malt, well ground, and boiling hot water, ſo much as the malt will ſweeten and the horſe will drink, ſtir them well together, and cover it over with a cloth, till the water has extracted the ſtrength of the

the malt, which will be almoſt as ſweet as honey, and feel ropy like birdlime; being but little or more than blood warm, give it the horſe, but not before, leſt the ſteam go up his noſtrils and offend him, and when he has drank up the water, let him, if he pleaſe, eat the malt too.

But if he refuſe to drink it, you muſt not give him any other water that night, but place this drink in ſome place of his ſtall, ſo that he may not throw it down, and let it ſtand by him all night, that he may drink it when he pleaſes.

This maſh, or as it is called, *horſe-caudle*, will comfort his ſtomach, and keep his body in a due temperate heat after his day's hunting; it will cleanſe and bring away all manner of greaſe and groſs humours, which have been diſſolved by the days labour; and the fume of the malt-grains, after he has drank the water, will diſperſe the watery humours which might otherwiſe annoy his head, and is allowed by all ſkilled in horſes, to be very advantageous on that account.

After he has eaten his maſh, ſtrip him of his cloaths, and run him over with a *curry-comb*, *French bruſh*, *hair-patch*, *woollen* and *cloth*, and cloath him up again; and cleanſe his legs as well as his body, of all dirt and filth which may annoy them, and then remove him into another ſtall, (that you may not wet his litter) and bathe his legs all over from the knees, with warm *beef broth*, or (which is better) with a quart of warm urine, in which four ounces of *ſalt-petre* has been diſſolved; then rub his legs dry, ſet him again into his ſtall, and give him a good home-feeding of oats, or bread, which he likes beſt or both, and having ſhook good ſtore of litter under him, that he may reſt the better; and thrown him hay enough for all night, ſhut the ſtable door cloſe, and leave him to his reſt till the next morning.

About ſix or ſeven o'clock the next morning, go to him again, but don't diſturb him, for the morning's reſt

reſt is as refreſhing to a horſe as to a man; but when he riſes of his own accord go to him, put back his dung from his litter, and obſerve what colour it is of, whether it be greaſy, and ſhine outwardly, and alſo break it with your feet, to ſee if it be ſo inwardly, for if it be greaſy and foul, (which you may know by it's ſhining outwardly, and by the ſpots like ſoap that will appear within) or if it appear of a dark brown colour, and harder than it was, it is a token that the hunting of the day before has done him good, by diſſolving part of the inward *glut* which was within him; and therefore the next time you hunt, you ſhould increaſe his labour but a little.

But if you perceive no ſuch ſymptoms, but that his dung appears bright, but rather *ſoft* than *hard*, without greaſe, and in a word, that it holds the ſame pale yellow colour that it did before he hunted, that it is a ſign that a day's hunting made no *diſſolution*, but that his body remains in the ſame ſtate ſtill, and therefore the next day's hunting you may almoſt double his labour.

Having made theſe remarks on his *dung*, then you may proceed to order him as on his days of reſt; that is to ſay, you ſhall give him a handful or two of *oats* before water, then dreſs, water, air, feed, *&c.* as in the firſt fortnight.

As to his feeding, you muſt not forget to change his food, as has been before directed; that is, to give him one while bread, another while oats, and a third time oats and beans, which you find he likes beſt; always remembring, that variety will ſharpen his appetite; but bread being his chief food, as being more nouriſhing and ſtrong than the others, feed him the oftner with it.

And as has been directed in the firſt fortnight, obſerve his *digeſtion* whether it be quick or ſlow; ſo likewiſe muſt you do when he begins to eat *bread*.

If you find him quick, and that he retains his bread but a little while, then only chip his bread lightly; but if it be ſlow, and he retains it long, then cut away all the cruſt and give it to ſome other horſe, and feed the hunting-horſe only with the *crumb*, for that being light of digeſtion, is ſoon converted into chyle and excrements, but the *cruſt* being not ſo ſoon digeſtible, requires, by reaſon of it's hardneſs, longer time before it is concocted.

The next day after your horſe has reſted, you may hunt him again as you did the firſt day, obſerving from the remarks you have made, to hunt him more or leſs according as you find his temper and conſtitution; and when you come home, put in practice the rules juſt now given.

And thus you may hunt him three times a week for a fortnight together, but don't fail to give him his full feeding, and no other *ſcourings* but nettles and hempſeed, which is equal in it's virtue with the former, and only carries off ſuperfluous humours in the dung.

The third fortnight's diet, &c. for a HUNTING-HORSE.

By this time the horſe will be drawn ſo clean, his fleſh will be ſo enſeamed, and his wind ſo improved, that he will be able to ride a chace of three or four miles without blowing or ſweating; and you may find by his *chaul* and *flank*, as well as his *ribs*, that he is in an indifferent good ſtate of body, and therefore in this next fortnight you muſt increaſe his labour, and by that means you will be able to make a judgment what he will be able to do, and whether or no he will be ever fit for running for *plates*, or a *match*.

When your horſe is ſet over night, and fed early in the morning, as has been directed for the ſecond fortnight, then go into the field with him, and when he is empty, (as he will be by that time you have ſtarted your game) follow the dogs at a good round

rate,

rate, as at half ſpeed, and ſo continue till you have either killed or loſt your firſt *hare*.

This will ſo rack your horſe, and he will have ſo emptied himſelf, that he will be in a fit condition to be rid the next chace briſkly, which as ſoon as it is begun, you may follow the dogs at three quarters ſpeed, and as near as is fit for a good horſeman, and ſkilful huntſman; but be ſure to take care not to ſtrain him.

During this day's riding, you ought to obſerve nicely, your horſe's *ſweat* under his *ſaddle* and *fore-bowels*, and if it appear white, like froth or ſoap-ſuds, it is a ſign of inward glut and foulneſs, and that your day's exerciſe was enough for him, therefore ride him home, and order him as before directed.

But if it has happened that your exerciſe has been ſo eaſy as not to ſweat your horſe thoroughly, then you ought to make a train ſcent of four miles in length, or thereabouts, and laying on your fleeteſt dogs, ride it briſkly, and afterwards cool him in the field, and ride him home and order him as has been before directed.

A *train ſcent*, is the trailing of a dead cat or fox, (and in caſe of neceſſity a red herring) three or four miles, according as the rider ſhall pleaſe, and then laying the dogs on the ſcent.

It will be proper to keep two or three couple of the fleeteſt hounds that can poſſibly be procured, for this purpoſe.

It is true indeed, ſome ſkilful ſportſmen do make uſe of their harriers in this caſe, for their diverſion, but it will not be convenient to uſe them to it often, for it will be apt to induce them to lie off the *line*, and fling ſo wide, that they will not be worth any thing.

When you take off your horſe's bridle, give him a good quantity of *rye-bread* inſtead of *hemp-ſeed* and

oats, and for that purpoſe bake a peck-loaf, for this being cold and moiſt, will be of uſe to cool his body after his labour, and prevent coſtiveneſs, to which you will find him addicted; then give him hay, and afterwards a maſh, and order him in all things as before directed.

The next morning, if you perceive by his *dung* that his body is diſtempered, and that he is hard and bound, then take ſome crumbs of your rye bread, and work it with as much ſweet freſh butter as will make it into a paſte, and make it up into balls about the bigneſs of a large walnut, of which give him five or ſix in a morning faſting.

After this put the ſaddle on upon the cloth, get up and gallop him gently upon ſome graſs-plat or cloſe that is near at hand, till he begin to ſweat under his ears, and then carry him into the ſtable again, rub him well, and throw a ſpare cloth over him, and a good quantity of freſh litter under him, and let him ſtand two hours on the bridle; then give him a quantity of *rye-bread*, and ſome *hay* to chew upon, then procure him a warm maſh, and feed him with bread and corn, as much as he will eat, and alſo as much hay as he will eat.

The next day water him abroad, and order him as is before directed for days of reſt.

The next day you may hunt him again, but not ſo hard as you did the time before, till the afternoon; but then ride him after the dogs briſkly, and if that does not make him ſweat thoroughly, make another *train-ſcent*, and follow the dogs three quarters ſpeed, that he may ſweat heartily: then cool him a little, and ride him home, and as ſoon as he is come into the ſtable, give him two or three balls as big as walnuts, of the following excellent ſcouring.

Take of *butter*, eight ounces; *lenitive electuary*, four ounces; *gromwel*, *broom*, and *purſly-ſeeds*, of each two ounces;

ounces; *anniſeeds*, *liquorice*, and *cream of tartar*, of each one ounce; of *jalap*, two ounces; reduce the ſeeds to a powder, then ſtir them into a paſte with the *electuary* and *butter*, knead it well together, put it into a pot, and keep it cloſe ſtopped for uſe.

As ſoon as the horſe has taken theſe balls, rub him dry, dreſs him, and cloath him warm, and let him ſtand two or three hours upon the ſnaffle; and afterwards give him two or three handfuls of rye-bread, and order him as you have been directed before, as to hay, provender, maſh, &c. and ſo leave him till the morning.

In the morning take notice of his dung, whether it ſtill retains the true colour, or be *dark*, or *black*, or *red* and *high-coloured*: in the next place, whether it be looſe and thin, or hard and dry.

If it be of a *pale yellow*, which is the right colour, it is a ſign of health, ſtrength, and cleanneſs; if it be *dark*, or *black*, then it is a ſign there is *greaſe* and other ill humours ſtirred up, which are not yet evacuated: if it be *red* and *high-coloured*, then it is a ſign that his blood is feveriſh and diſtempered, by means of inward heat: if it be looſe and thin, it is a ſign of weakneſs; but if hard and dry, it ſhews the horſe to be hot inwardly, or elſe that he is a foul feeder: but if his dung be in a medium between hard and ſoft, and ſmell ſtrong, it is a ſign of health and vigour.

When theſe obſervations have been made on his dung, then *feed*, *dreſs*, *water*, &c. as on his uſual days of reſt, always letting him have variety, and his fill of *corn* and *bread*.

The next day have him abroad into the field again, but do not by any means put him to any labour more than raking him from hill to hill after the dogs, keeping him within ſound of their cry; for the intent of this day's exerciſe, is only to keep him in breath, and procure him anappetite.

In riding, let him ſtand ſtill to dung, and look back on it, that you may be able to judge of his ſtate thereby.

When the day is near ſpent, ride him home without the leaſt ſweat, and order him as at other times, except that you are not to give him any *ſcourings*, or *rye-bread*.

You may, if you pleaſe, this day, water your horſe both at going into the field, and coming out, *galloping* him after it, to warm the water in his belly.

The next day being to be a day of reſt, order him in the ſame manner in every reſpect as on other days of reſt, and as you have ſpent this week, you muſt ſpend the next, without any alteration; and by this time, and this management, you may depend upon it that your horſe has been drawn clean enough for ordinary hunting.

So that afterwards, only taking care to hunt your horſe with moderation twice or three times a week, at your pleaſure, and according to the conſtitution of your horſe's body, you need not queſtion but to have him in as good ſtate and ſtrength as you can deſire, without danger of his *wind*, *eye-ſight*, *feet*, or *body*.

Having thus drawn your horſe clean, according to art, you will perceive thoſe ſigns before-mentioned very plainly, for his fleſh on his ſhort ribs and buttocks will be as hard as *brawn*, his *flank* will be thin, and nothing to be felt but a double ſkin, and *chaps* ſo clean from *fat*, *glut*, or *kernels*, that you may hide your fiſts in them; and above all, this exerciſe will give plain demonſtration of the effectualneſs of this method of ordering him, for he will run three or four miles three quarters ſpeed without ſweating, or ſcarce ſo much as blowing.

When the horſe has been brought to this ſtate, you muſt uſe no more ſcourings after hunting, (becauſe nature has nothing to work on) but rye-bread and maſh,

maſh, except the horſe be now and then troubled with ſome little poſe in his head; and then bruiſe a little muſtard ſeed in a fine linnen rag, and ſteep it in a quart of ſtrong ale, for three or four hours, and then untying the rag, mix the muſtard-ſeed and the ale with a quarter of a peck of oats, and give it to him.

In the laſt place, the horſe having been thus drawn clean, you ought to take care not to let him grow foul again, through want of either *airing* or *hunting*, or any other negligence, leſt by that means you make your ſelf a double trouble.

Of breeding HUNTING *and* RACE-HORSES.

Procure either an *Arabian*, a *Spaniſh*, *a Turkiſh* horſe, or a *Barb* for a *Stallion*, which is well ſhaped, and of a good colour to beautify your race; and ſome adviſe that he be well marked too, tho' others are of opinion, that marks are not ſo ſignificant as Mr. *Blundeville* and *Frederigo Griſſine* would have us believe.

Thoſe who have travelled into thoſe parts, report, that the right *Arabian* horſes are valued at an almoſt incredible rate, at five hundred, and others ſay, two or three thouſand pounds an horſe; that the *Arabs* are as careful of keeping the genealogies of their horſes, as Princes are in keeping their pedigrees; that they keep them with medals; and that each ſon's portion is uſually two ſuits of arms, two cymetars, and one of theſe *horſes*. The *Arabs* boaſt, that they will ride eighty miles a-day without drawing bitt; which is no more than has been perform'd by ſeveral of our *Engliſh* horſes.

But much more was perform'd by a highwayman's horſe, who having committed a robbery, rode on the ſame day from *London* to *York*, being an hundred and fifty miles.

Notwithſtanding their great value, and the difficulty

in bringing them from *Scandercon* to *England* by ſea; yet by the care and charge of ſome breeders in the north, the *Arabian* horſe is no ſtranger to thoſe parts, where probably may be ſeen at this day ſome of the race, if not a true *Arabian* ſtallion.

The *Spaniſh* horſe (in the Duke of *Newcaſtle's* opinion) is the nobleſt horſe in the world, and the moſt beautiful that can be; no horſe is ſo beautifully ſhaped all over from *head* to *croup*, as he is abſolutely the beſt *ſtallion* in the world, either for breed, for the manage, the war, the pad, hunting, or running-horſes; but as they are excellent, ſo is their price extravagant, three or four hundred piſtoles being a common price for a *Spaniſh* horſe.

Several have been ſold for ſeven hundred, eight hundred, and a thouſand piſtoles a-piece.

The beſt *Spaniſh* horſes are bred in *Andaluſia*, and particularly at *Cordoua*, where the King has many ſtuds of mares, and ſo likewiſe have ſeveral of the *Spaniſh* nobility and gentry,

Now beſides the great price they coſt at firſt, the charges of the journey from *Spain* to *England*, will be very conſiderable; for firſt they muſt travel from *Andaluſia* to *Bilboa*, or *St. Sebaſtian*, the neareſt ports to *England*, and is at leaſt four hundred miles: and in that hot country, you cannot with ſafety travel your horſe above twenty miles a-day; and beſides, you muſt be at the expence of a *Groom* and *Farrier*, beſides the caſualty of ſickneſs, lameneſs, and death: ſo that if he ſhould happen to prove an extraordinary good horſe, by the time you have got him home, he will alſo be an *extraordinary dear one*.

The *Turkiſh* horſe is but little inferior to the *Spaniſh* in beauty, but ſomewhat odd ſhaped, his head being ſomething like that of a *camel*; he hath excellent eyes, a thin neck, excellently riſen, and ſomewhat large of body; his *croup* is like that of a mule, his legs not ſo under-

under-limbed as thoſe of a *Barb*, but very ſinewy, good paſterns, and good hoofs: they never amble, but trot very well, and are at preſent accounted better ſtallions for gallopers than *Barbs*.

Some merchants tell us, that there cannot be a more noble and diverting ſight to a lover of horſes, than to walk into the paſtures near *Conſtantinople*, about ſoiling-time, where he may ſee many hundred gallant horſes tethered, and every horſe has his attendant or keeper, with his little tent placed near him to lie in, that he may look to him, and take care to ſhift him to freſh graſs.

The price of a *Turkiſh* horſe, is commonly one hundred, or one hundred and fifty pound; and when bought, it is difficult to get a paſs, the Grand Signior being ſo very ſtrict, that he ſeldom (but upon very extraordinary occaſions) permits any of his horſes to be exported out of his dominions.

But if you ſhould attain a liberty ſo to do, and travel by land, unleſs you have a *Turk* or two for a convoy, you will be ſure to have them ſeized on by the way.

And beſides, you will find the ſame difficulties of a long journey, for you muſt come through *Germany*, which is a very long way, and the ſame charges attending it, that is, a Groom and Farrier, who muſt be careful that they entruſt no perſon whatſoever with the care of him but themſelves, eſpecially in ſhoeing him, for 'tis the common practice beyond ſea, as well as here, wherever they ſee a fine horſe, to hire a farrier to prick him, that they may buy him for a ſtallion.

But ſome perſons chuſe to buy horſes at *Smyrna* in *Anatolia*, and from thence, and likewiſe from *Conſtantinople*, to tranſport them to *England* by ſea, which if the wind ſerve right, arrive in *England* in a month; tho' generally the merchants voyages are not made in much leſs than two or three months.

The *Barb* is little inferior to any of the former in beauty; but our modern breeders account him too ſlender and *lady like* to breed on, and therefore in the north of *England* they prefer the *Spaniſh* and *Turkiſh* horſe before him.

He is ſo lazy and negligent in his walk, that he will ſtumble on carpet-ground.

His trot is like that of a cow, his gallop low, and with much eaſe to himſelf; but he is for the moſt part ſinewy and nervous, excellently winded, and good for a *courſe* if he be not over weighed.

The mountain *Barbs* are eſteem'd the beſt, becauſe they are ſtrongeſt and largeſt: they belong to the *Alarbes*, who value them themſelves as much as other nations do, and therefore will not part with them to any perſons, except to the *Prince of the land* to which they belong, who can at any time at his pleaſure command them for his own uſe: but for the other more ordinary ſort, they are to be met with pretty common in the hands of our Nobility and Gentry; or if you ſend to *Languedoc*, or *Provence*, in *France*, they may be bought there for forty or fifty piſtoles a-horſe.

Or if you ſend to *Barbary*, you may buy one for thirty pounds, or thereabouts; but in this caſe too, the charges and journey will be great, for tho' it be no great voyage from *Tunis* to *Marſeilles* in *France*, yet from *Marſeilles* to *Calais*, by land, is the whole length of *France*, and from thence they are ſhipped for *England*.

The next thing to be conſidered, is the choice of *mares*, and according to the Duke of *Newcaſtle*'s opinion, the fitteſt mare to breed out of, is one that has been bred of an *Engliſh* mare, and a ſtallion of either of theſe races; but if you can't get ſuch a mare, then get a right bred *Engliſh* mare by *ſire* and *dam*, that is well *fore-handed*, well *underlaid*, and ſtrong put together in general; and in particular, ſee that ſhe have a

lean

lean head, wide noſtrils, open *chaul*, a big *weaſand*, and the *wind-pipe* ſtrait and looſe; and of about five or ſix years old; and be ſure that the ſtallion be not too old.

As for the Food of the STALLION;

Keep him as high as poſſibly you can, for the firſt four or five months before the time of *covering*, with old clean *oats* and *ſplit beans*, well hull'd, and if you pleaſe you may add bread to them, ſuch as you will hereafter be directed to make; and now and then a handful of clean wheat may be given him, or oats waſhed in ſtrong ale, for variety.

Mr. *Morgan* adviſes to ſcatter bay ſalt and anniſeeds in his provender; but others are of opinion that this is ſuperfluous, while the horſe is in health.

Be ſure to let him have plenty of good *old ſweet hay*, well-cleanſed from duſt, and good wheat ſtraw to lie on; water him twice a-day, at ſome fair running ſtream, or elſe in a clear ſtanding pond water, if you cannot have the firſt; and gallop him after he hath drank, in ſome meadow or level piece of ground.

Do not ſuffer him to drink his fill at his firſt coming to the water, but after his firſt draught, gallop and ſcope him up and down to warm him, and then bring him to the water again and let him drink his fill, galloping him again as before, never leaving the water till he has drank as much as he will.

By this means you will prevent raw crudities, which the coldneſs of the water would otherwiſe produce, to the detriment of his ſtomach, if you had permitted him to drink his fill at firſt; whereas you allowing him his fill (tho' by degrees) at laſt, you keep his body from drying too faſt.

Mr. *Morgan* indeed, directs the ſweating of him every day, early in the morning, which he ſays will not only perfect digeſtion, and exhauſt the moiſture

from his ſeed, but alſo ſtrengthen and cleanſe his blood and body from all raw and imperfect humours: but others are of opinion it will dry up the *radical moiſture* too faſt; and likewiſe, inſtead of heightening his pride and luſt, weaken him too much.

As for other rules for the ordering him after watering, and the hours of feeding, *&c.* they will be more proper.

When the ſtallion is in luſt, and the time of covering him is come, which is beſt to be in *May*, that the foals may fall in the *April* following, otherwiſe they will have little or no graſs;

Then pull off his hinder ſhoes, and lead him to the place where the ſtud of *mares* are which you intend for covering; which place ought to be cloſe, well fenced, and in it a little hut for a man to lie in, and a larger ſhed with a manger, to feed your ſtallion with bread and corn during his abode with the mares, and ſhelter for him in the *heat of the day*, and in *rainy weather*: and this cloſe ought to be of ſufficient largneſs to keep mares well for two months.

Before you pull off his bridle, let him cover a mare, or two in hand, then turn him looſe among them, and put all your mares to him, as well thoſe that are with foal, as thoſe which are not, for there is no danger in it; and by that means they will all be ſerved in the heighth of their luſt, and according to the *intention of nature*.

When your ſtallion has covered them once, he will try them all over again, and thoſe that will admit him, he will ſerve, and when he has done his buſineſs, he will beat againſt the pales, and attempt to be at liberty, which when your man finds, (who is to obſerve them night and day, and to take care that no other mares are put to your horſe, and to give you an account which take the horſe, and which not, *&c.*) then take him up, and keep him well as you did before, firſt

giving

giving him a maſh or two, to help to reſtor nature; for you will find him little but ſkin and bones, and his *mane* and *tail* will rot off.

Be ſure never to give him above ten or twelve mares in a ſeaſon at moſt, otherwiſe you will ſcarce recover him againſt the next covering time.

When your ſtallion is paſt this uſe, then buy another, for the beſt kind will in time degenerate. But the Duke of *Newcaſtle* ſays, you cannot do better than to let your own mares be covered by their ſires.

Some adviſe to *covering in hand*, as the other is called *covering out of hand*, and is as follows: When you have brought both your horſe and your mare to a proper condition for breeding, by art and good feeding, then ſet ſome ordinary ſtone nag by her for a day or two, to woo her, and that will make her ſo prone to luſt, that ſhe will readily receive your ſtallion, which you ſhould preſent to her, either early in a morning or late in an evening, for a day or two together, and let him cover in hand once or twice, if you pleaſe, at each time obſerving to give the horſe the advantage of ground, and have a perſon ready with a bucket of cold water to throw on the mare's ſhape immediately upon the diſmounting of the horſe, which will make her retain the ſeed ſhe received the better; eſpecially if you get on her back, and trot her up and down for a quarter of an hour, but take care of heating or ſtraining her; and it will not be amiſs if you let them faſt two hours after ſuch act, and then give each of them a warm maſh, and it is odds but this way your mares may be as well ſerved as the other, and your ſtallion will laſt you much longer.

If you take care to houſe the mares all the winter, and keep them well, their colts will prove the better.

Of riding a HUNTING-MATCH, *or* HEATS *for a* PLATE.

In order to ride to the beſt advantage, either a hunting-match, or three heats and a courſe for a plate.

The firſt thing requiſite is a *rider*, who ought to be a faithful one, in whom you can confide; and he ſhould have a good cloſe ſeat, his knees being held firm to his ſaddle-ſkirts, his toes being turned inwards, and his ſpurs outwards from the horſe's ſides, his left hand governing the horſe's mouth, and his right commanding the whip; taking care, during the whole time of the trial, to ſit firm in the ſaddle, without waving, or ſtanding up in the ſtirrups, which actions do very much incommode a horſe, notwithſtanding the conceited opinion of ſome jockies, that it is a becoming ſeat.

In ſpurring his horſe, he ſhould not ſtrike him hard with the calves of his legs, as if he would beat the wind out of his body, but juſt turning his toes outwards, and bringing his ſpurs quick to his ſides; and ſuch a ſharp ſtroke will be of more ſervice towards the quickening of the horſe, and ſooner draw blood.

Let him be ſure never to ſpur him but when there is occaſion, and avoid ſpurring him under the fore-bowels, between his ſhoulders and girths, near the heart, (which is the tendereſt place of a horſe) till the laſt extremity.

As to the whipping the horſe, it ought to be over the ſhoulder on the near ſide, except upon hard running, and when you are at all, then ſtrike the horſe in the flank with a ſtrong jerk, the ſkin being tendereſt there, and moſt ſenſible of the laſh.

He muſt obſerve, when he whips and ſpurs his horſe, and is certain that he is at the top of his ſpeed, if then he claps his ears in his pole, or whiſks his tail, then he may be ſure that he bears him hard; and then he

ought

ought to give him as much comfort as he can, by *ſawing* his ſnaffle to and fro in his mouth, and by this means forcing him to open his mouth, which will comfort him and give him wind.

If in the time of riding there is any high wind ſtirring, if it be in his face, he ſhould let the adverſary lead, he holding hard behind him till he ſees an opportunity of giving a looſe; yet he muſt take care to keep ſo cloſe to him, that his adverſary's horſe may break the wind from his, and that he, by ſtooping low in his ſeat, may ſhelter himſelf under him, which will aſſiſt the ſtrength of his horſe.

But on the contrary, if the wind be at his back, he muſt ride exactly behind him, that his own horſe may alone enjoy the benefit of the wind, by being as it were blown forward, and by breaking it from his adverſary as much as poſſible.

In the next place, obſerve what ground your horſe delights moſt to run on, and bear the horſe (as much as your adverſary will give you leave) on level carpet ground, becauſe the horſe will naturally be deſirous to ſpend him more freely thereon; but on deep earths give him more liberty, becauſe he will naturally favour himſelf thereupon.

If you are to run up hill, don't forget by any means to favour your horſe, and bear him, for fear of running him out of wind; but if it be down hill, (if your horſe's feet and ſhoulders will endure it, and you dare venture your neck) always give him a looſe.

This may be obſerved as a general rule, that if you find your horſe to have the heels of the other, that then you be careful to preſerve his ſpeed till the laſt train-ſcent, if you are not to run a ſtrait courſe; but if ſo, then till the end of the courſe, and ſo to huſband it then alſo, that you may be able to make a puſh for it at the laſt poſt.

In the next place you are to acquaint yourſelf, as well

well as you can, of the nature and temper of your adverſary's horſe, and if he be fiery, then to run juſt behind, or juſt cheek by joul, and with your whip make as much noiſe as you can, that you may force him on faſter than his rider would have him, and by that means ſpend him the ſooner; or elſe keep juſt before him, on ſuch a ſlow gallop, that he may either overreach, or by treading on your horſe's heels, (if he will not take the leading) endanger falling over.

Take notice alſo on what ground your opponent's horſe runs the worſt, and be ſure to give a looſe on that earth, that he being forced to follow you, may be in danger of ſtumbling, or clapping on the back ſinews.

In the like manner, in your riding obſerve the ſeveral *helps* and *corrections* of the *hand*, the *whip*, and *ſpur*, and when, and how often he makes uſe of them; and when you perceive that his horſe begins to be *blown*, by any of the former ſymptoms, as clapping down his ears, whiſking his tail, holding out his noſe like a pig, *&c.* you may then take it for granted that he is at the height of what he can do; and therefore in this caſe, take notice how your own rides, and if he run chearfully and ſtrongly, without ſpurring, then be ſure to keep your adverſary to the ſame ſpeed, without giveing him eaſe, and by ſo doing, you will quickly bring him to give out, or elſe diſtance him.

Obſerve at the end of every *train-ſcent* what condition the other horſe is in, and how he holds out in his labour, of which you may be able to make a judgment by his looks, the working of his flank, and the flackneſs of his girths.

For if he look dull, it is a ſign that his ſpirits fail him; if his flanks beat much, it is a token that his wind begins to fail him, and conſequently his ſtrength will do ſo too.

If his wind fail him, then his body will grow thin, and

and appear tuckt up, which will make his girths, to the eye, ſeem to be ſlack; and therefore you may take this for a rule, that a horſe's wanting girting, after the firſt ſcent, provided he were girt cloſe at his firſt ſtarting is a good ſign, and if you find it ſo, you need not much deſpair of winning the wager.

After the end of every *train-ſcent*, and alſo after every heat for a plate, you muſt have dry ſtraw and dry cloaths, both linen and woollen, which have been ſteeped in *urine* and *ſalt-petre* a day or two and then dried in the ſun, and alſo one or two of each muſt be brought into the field wet; and after the train has been ended, two or three perſons muſt help you, and after the groom has with a knife of heat, (as it is called by the Duke of *Newcaſtle*) which is a piece of an old ſword blade ſcraped off all the ſweat from the horſe's neck, body, *&c.* then they muſt rub him well down dry, all over, firſt with the dry ſtraw, and then with dry cloths, whilſt others are buſy about his legs, and as ſoon as they have rubbed him dry, then let them chafe them with the wet cloths, and never give over till you are called by the judges to ſtart again.

This will render his joints pliant and nimble, and prevent any inflammation which might ariſe from any old ſtrain.

The next thing to be regarded, are the judges or triers office, who are to ſee that all things are ordered according to the articles agreed on, which to that end ought to be read before the horſes ſtart.

Next, that each trier on whoſe ſide the train is to be led, according to the articles give directions for it's leading, according to the advice of the *rider*, or his knowledge of the nature and diſpoſition of that horſe on whoſe ſide he is choſe.

Next, that each *trier* be ſo advantageouſly mounted, as to ride up behind the horſes (but not upon them) all day, and to obſerve that the contrary horſe ride his

true

true ground, and obſerve the articles in every particular, or elſe not to permit him to proceed.

Next, that after each *train-ſcent* be ended, each *trier* look to that horſe againſt which he is choſen, and obſerve that he be no ways relieved but with rubbing, except liberty on both ſides be given to the contrary.

Next, as ſoon as the time allowed for rubbing be expired, which is generally half an hour, they ſhall command them to mount, and if either rider refuſe, it may be lawful for the other to ſtart without him; and having beat him the diſtance agreed on, the wager is to be adjudged on his ſide.

Next, the *triers* ſhall keep off all other horſes from croſſing the *riders*; only they themſelves may be allowed to inſtruct the *riders* by word of mouth how to ride, whether ſlow or faſt, according to the advantages he perceives may be gained by his directions.

Laſtly, if there be any weight agreed on, they ſhall ſee that both horſes bring their true weight to the ſtarting-place, and carry it to the end of the train, upon the penalty of loſing the wager.

The ſame rules are to be obſerved, eſpecially this laſt, by thoſe gentlemen which are choſen to be *judges* at a race for a plate, only they uſually ſtay in a ſtand, that they may the better ſee which horſe wins the heat.

Now in running for a *plate*, there are not ſo many obſervations to be made, nor more directions required, than what have been already given, only this, if you know your horſe to be tough at bottom, and that he will ſtick at mark, to ride him each heat according to the beſt of his performance, and avoid as much as poſſible either riding at any particular horſe, or ſtaying for any, but to ride each heat throughout with the beſt ſpeed you can.

But if you have a very fiery horſe to manage, or one that is hard mouth'd and difficult to be held, then

ſtart

ſtart him behind the reſt of the horſes, with all the coolneſs and gentleneſs imaginable; and when you find that he begins to ride at ſome command, then put up to the other horſes, and if you find they ride at their eaſe, and are hard held, then endeavour to draw them on faſter; but if you find their wind begin to rake hot, and that they want a ſob, if your horſe be in wind, and you have a looſe in your hand, keep them up to their ſpeed till you come within three quarters of a mile of the end of the heat, and then give a looſe and puſh for it, and leave to fortune and the goodneſs of your horſe, the event of your ſucceſs.

Lastly, when either your *hunting-match*, or the *trial* for the *plate* is ended, as ſoon as you have rubbed your horſe dry, cloth him up and ride him home, and the firſt thing, give him the following drink to comfort him.

Beat the yolks of three eggs, and put them into a pint and a half of ſweet milk, then warm it luke-warm, and put to it three penny worth of ſaffron, and three ſpoonfuls of ſallad oil, and give it him in a horn.

Having done this, dreſs him ſlightly over with the curry-comb, bruſh, and woollen-cloth, and then bathe the place where the ſaddle ſtood with warm ſack, to prevent warbles; and waſh the ſpurring-places with piſs and ſalt, and afterwards anoint them with turpentine and powder of *jett*, mixed together; then litter the ſtable very well, clothing him up as quick as poſſible, and let him ſtand for two hours.

Then feed him with *rye-bread*, after that with a good maſh, and give him his belly full of hay, and what corn and bread he will eat.

Then bathe his legs well with urine and ſalt-petre, leave him corn in his locker, and ſo let him reſt till the

the next morning, at which time order him as before directed in his days of reſt.

How to order a horſe for a match or Plate.

When you have matched your horſe, or deſign to put him in for a a plate, you ought to conſider that you ought to reſerve a month at leaſt, to draw his body perfectly clean, and to refine his wind to that degree of perfection that is capable of being attained by art.

In the firſt place, take an exact view of the ſtate of his body, both outwardly and inwardly, as whether he be *low* or *high* in fleſh, or whether he be dull and heavy when abroad, and if this has been cauſed by too hard riding, or by means of ſome greaſe that has been diſſolved by hunting, and has not been removed by ſcouring.

If he appear *ſluggiſh* and *melancholy* from either of theſe cauſes, then give him half an ounce of *diapente* in a pint of good old *Malaga* ſack, which will both cleanſe his body and revive his ſpirits.

Then for the firſt week, feed him continually with *bread*, *oats*, and *ſplit beans*, giving him ſometimes the one and ſometimes the other, according to what he likes beſt, always leaving him ſome in his locker for him to eat at leiſure when you are abſent; and when you return at your hours of feeding, take away what is left and give him freſh, till you have made him wanton and playful.

To this purpuſe, take notice, that tho' you ride him every day morning and evening, on airing, and every other day on hunting, yet you are not to ſweat him, or put him to any violent labour, the deſign of this week's ordering being to keep him in wind and breath, and to prevent *purſiveneſs*.

But take notice of this, that your *oats*, *beans*, and *bread*, are now to be ordered after another manner than what

what they were before ; for firſt, the oats muſt be well dried in the ſun, and then put into a clean bag and ſoundly beat with a flail or cudgell, till you think they are hulled, then take them out of the bag and winnow them clean, both from hulls and duſt, and give them to your horſe as there is occaſion.

After the ſame manner muſt you order your beans, ſeparating them from the hulls, which are apt to breed the *glut*, and muſt either be thrown away, or given among chaff to ſome more ordinary horſe.

And as for the *bread*, which was only chipt before, now the cruſt muſt be cut clean off, and be otherwiſe diſpoſed of, it being hard of digeſtion, and will be apt to heat and dry the horſe's body; and beſides, you muſt make a finer bread than before, as follows.

Take two pecks of beans, and a peck of wheat, and let them be ground together, but not too fine, to prevent too much bran being in the bread ; and dreſs one peck of the meal through a fine range, and knead it up with new ale yeaſt, and the whites of a dozen new-laid eggs, and bake this in a loaf by it ſelf; but dreſs the reſt of the meal through a boulter, and kneed it only with ale and yeaſt, and uſe it in all other points as the former: the peck loaf is to be given the horſe when you ſet him, and the other at ordinary times.

This bread aſſiſts nature, and does very much increaſe the *ſtrength*, *courage*, and *wind* of the horſe, (provided there be added to it true labour) as any bread whatſoever.

Having treated of the condition of thoſe horſes which are melancholy and low of fleſh, I ſhall now ſpeak of thoſe which are brisk and lively: If your horſe be ſo, that when you lead him out of the ſtable he will leap and play about you, then you muſt not only omit giving him the ſcouring of ſack and *diapente*, but any other whatſoever, for there being no foul humours, nor ſuperfluous matter left in his body, for the phyſic

phyſic to work upon, it will prey upon the ſtrength of his body, and by that means weaken it.

If your horſe be engaged in a hunting-match, you muſt ſweat him twice this week, but not by hunting him after the *hare*, but by *train-ſcents*, ſince the former on this occaſion may prove deceitful; for tho' the hounds ſhould be very ſwift, yet the ſcent being cold, the dogs will very often be at fault, and by that means the horſe will have many ſobs: ſo that when he comes to run train-ſcents in earneſt, he will expect eaſe for his wind.

Therefore lead your train-ſcents with a dead cat, over ſuch grounds as you are likely to run on, and beſt agrees with the humour of your horſe, and alſo chuſe the fleeteſt hounds you can get, and they will keep your horſe up to the height of his ſpeed.

As to the number of *train-ſcents* that you ſhould ride at a time, that is to be ordered according to the match you are to run, or rather according to the ſtrength of your horſe, and ability for performing his heats; for if you labour him beyond his ſtrength, it will take him off his ſpeed, weaken his limbs, and daunt his ſpirit.

If you give him too little exerciſe, it will render him liable to be purſive, and full of ill humours, as glut, *&c.* and incline him to a habit of lazineſs, ſo that when he comes to be put to labour beyond his uſual rate, he will grow reſtive and ſettle, like a jade.

But ſo far may be ſaid by way of direction, that if you are to run eight *train-ſets*, and the ſtrait courſe, more or leſs, you are to put him to ſuch ſevere labour, not above twice in the whole month's keeping.

And if it be in the firſt fortnight, it will be the better, for then he will have a whole fortnight to recover his ſtrength in again; and as for his labour in his laſt fortnight, let it be proportionate to his ſtrength and wind,

wind, as ſometimes half his taſk, and then three quarters of it.

Only obſerve, that the laſt trial you make in the firſt fortnight, be a train-ſcent more than your match; for by that means you will find what he is able to do.

And as to the proportion of his exerciſe twice a week, that is ſufficient to keep him in breath, and yet will not diminiſh or injure his vigour.

But if your hunting-match be to run fewer trains, then you may put him to his whole taſk the oftner, according as you find him in condition; only obſerve, that you are not to ſtrain him for ten days at leaſt, before he ride his match, that he may be led into the field in perfect ſtrength and vigour.

If you deſign your horſe for a *Plate*, let him take his heats according to this direction, only let him be on the place, that he may be acquainted with the ground; and as for the hounds, you may omit them, as not being tied to their ſpeed, but that of your adverſary's horſe.

But as to the number of heats, let them be according to what the articles exact; only obſerve, that, as to the ſharpneſs of them, they muſt be regulated according to his ſtrength, and the goodneſs of his wind.

And when you heat him, provide ſome horſes upon the courſe to run againſt him; this will quicken his ſpirits and encourage him, when he finds he can command them at his pleaſure.

And here you muſt obſerve the ſame rule, not to give the horſe a bloody heat for ten days, or a fortnight, before the plate be to run for; and let the laſt heat you give him before the day of trial be in all his cloths, and juſt ſkelp it over, which will make him run the next time the more vigorouſly, when he ſhall be ſtript naked, and feel the cold air pierce him.

During this month, and on his reſting-days, and after his ſweats on heating-days, (if there be any occaſion

caſion for ſweating him) you muſt obſerve the ſame rules which have been given for the firſt week of the third fortnight's keeping, only you muſt omit all ſcourings but rye-bread and maſhes, ſince your horſe being in ſo perfect a ſtate of body, has no need of any, except you ſhall judge there is occaſion, and that the horſe proves thirſty, about eight or nine o'clock at night, you may give him the following julep, to cool and quench his thirſt.

Take two quarts of *barley-water*, three ounces of ſyrup of *violets*, two ounces of ſyrup of *lemons*, and having mixed them together, give them the horſe to drink, and if he refuſe, place it ſo that he may not throw it down, and let it ſtand by him all night.

During the laſt fortnight, you muſt give him dried oats that have been hulled by beating, and having waſhed half a ſtrike of oats in the whites of a dozen or twenty eggs, ſtir them together, and let them lie all night to ſoak, and ſpread them abroad in the ſun the next morning, till they are as dry as they were at firſt, and ſo give them to your horſe; and when theſe are ſpent, prepare another quantity after the ſame manner. This food is light of digeſtion, and very good for his wind.

You muſt order his beans as before, but not give him them ſo often, if he will eat his oats without them; and as for his bread this time, make that of two parts wheat to one of beans, and order it as before directed.

But if you find your horſe inclinable to be coſtive, then give him oats waſhed in two or three whites of eggs and ale beaten together, to cool his body and keep it moiſt.

Give him not any maſh for the laſt week, only the *barley-water* before directed, but let him have his fill of hay, till a day before he is to ride the *match*, when you muſt give it him more ſparingly, that he may have time

time to digeſt that he has eaten, and then, and not before, you may muzzle him with your caveſſon; and be ſure that day, and not till the morning he is led out, to feed him as much as poſſible, for ſuch a day's labour will require ſomething to maintain his ſtrength.

Therefore in the morning before you are to lead out, give him a toaſt or two of white bread ſteeped in ſack, which will invigorate him; and when you have done, lead him out into the field.

But if you are to run for a *plate*, which commonly is not till three o'clock in the afternoon, then by all means have him out early in the morning air, that he may empty his body, and when he is come in from airing, feed him with toaſts in ſack; conſidering that as too much fullneſs will endanger his wind, ſo too long faſting will cauſe faintneſs.

When he has eaten what you thought fit to give him, put on his caveſſon, and having afterwards ſoundly chafed his legs with piece-greaſe and brandy warmed together, or train-oil (which likewiſe ought to be uſed daily at noon, for a week before the *match*, or longer if you ſee cauſe) ſhake up his litter and ſhut the ſtable up cloſe, and take care that there is no noiſe made near him, and let him reſt till the hour comes that he is to go out into the field.

Of MARES.

MARES, the female of the *horſe-kind*, is chiefly conſidered here, under the notion of breeding, in order to propagate their ſpecies; therefore ſuch as are deſigned for this purpoſe ought to be as free from defects as poſſible, and ſhould, no more than the ſtallions, have either moon-eyes, watery-eyes, or blood-ſhot-eyes; they ſhould have no ſplaint, ſpavin, nor curb, nor any natural imperfection, for the colts will take after them; but choice ſhould be made of the

beſt and ableſt, the high ſpirited, beſt coloured, and fineſt ſhaped; and the natural defects that may be in the ſtallion, ſhould be amended in the mare, as well as that which is amiſs in the mare, ſhould be repaired in the ſtallion.

No mares in the world are certainly better to breed on than our *Engliſh* ones, provided you ſuit them to your particular deſign; as for inſtance, if you would breed for the *manage* or *pads*, let your mares have fine *foreheads*, with their *heads* well ſet on, but not too long *legs*, broad *breaſts*, large and ſparkling *eyes*, and and great *bodies*, that their *foals* may have room enough to lie, with good *limbs* and *feet*: Let them be of a gentle and good diſpoſition, and their Motions naturally nimble and graceful; in a word, remember always, that the more good qualities your *mares* have, the better will your *colts* generally prove.

But if you would breed for *racing* or *hunting*, your *mares* muſt be lighter, with ſhort *backs*, and long *ſides*; their *legs* muſt be ſomething longer, and their *breaſts* not ſo broad; and always chuſe ſuch as you are ſure have good blood in their veins.

If you have tried the *ſpeed* and *wind* of any particular mare, and find it good, you may the ſurer expect a good *colt*, provided ſhe be ſtill in her full health and vigour, and not above ſeven years old, or eight at moſt; for the younger your breeders are, the better your *colts* will generally be.

A *mare* may be covered when ſhe is paſſed two years old, though the beſt time is after four years, when ſhe will nouriſh her colt beſt; and though ſhe may breed till thirteen, yet when ſhe is paſt ten, it does not do ſo well, for commonly an old mare's colt will be heavy in labour. The proper time for covering, is reckoned from the end of the firſt quarter to the full moon, or at the full; for thoſe *colts* will be ſtronger and hardier of nature; whereas 'tis obſerved in thoſe

that

that are covered after the change, that they will be tender and nice: But before the mare is covered, ſhe ſhould be taken into the houſe about ſix weeks, and be well fed with good hay and oats, well ſifted, to the end ſhe may have ſtrength and ſeed to perform the office of generation.

But if you would have your mare certainly conceive, take blood from both ſides her neck, near a quart from each vein, about five or ſix days before covering; and if you deſire to have a horſe colt, the uſual advice is, to have her covered when one of the maſculine Signs governs, which are either *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, or *Leo*; and under the other Signs you will have a mare foal. This is accounted ſo certain, that it ſeldom or never fails, eſpecially if the wind be either weſt or north, though the weſt is the beſt for it.

As for the manner of covering, ſhe muſt be brought out into ſome broad place, and tied to a poſt, then bring out ſome ſtone jade to dally with her, to provoke her to appetite; after which let the ſtallion be led out by two men, and let him leap her in the morning faſting, and when he is diſmounting, let a pail of cold water be thrown upon her ſhape, which by reaſon of the coldneſs, will make her ſhrink in and truſs up her body, whereby ſhe is cauſed to retain the ſeed the better; then take away the ſtallion, and let the mare be put out of the hearing of the horſe, and let her neither eat nor drink in four or five hours after, and then give her a maſh and white water: You may know if ſhe ſtands to her covering, by her keeping a good ſtomach, and her not neighing at the ſight of a horſe; ſo likewiſe if ſhe does not piſs often, nor frequently open and ſhut her ſhape; or that her belly four days after covering be more gaunt, the hair more ſleek and cloſe to her ſkin, and the like. Some there are who put the horſe and mare together into an empty houſe, for three or four nights, and take the horſe away in the

morning and feed him well, but the mare ſparingly, and eſpecially they give her but little water.

Now as for the ordering the mare after covering, let her be kept to the ſame diet as before, for three weeks or a month, leſt the ſeed be impaired before it be formed in the womb; and let her be kept ſweet and clean, without any exerciſe, during three weeks or a month; and in the houſe till *mid-day*, with her feet well pared, and with a thin pair of ſhoes on: Take her up again about the latter end of *September*, if not before, and keep her to the end of her foaling.

If ſhe cannot foal, hold her noſtrils ſo that ſhe cannot take her wind; or if that will not do, take the quantity of a walnut of *madder*, diſſolve it in a pint of ale, and give it warm to her; and in caſe ſhe cannot void her *Secundine*, then boil two or three handfuls of *fennel* in running-water, and put half a pint thereof in as much ſack, or for want thereof, a pint of ſtrong beer or ale, with a fourth part of ſallad oil, mixed together, and give it her lukewarm in her noſtrils, and hold them cloſe for a good ſpace; or for want thereof, give her good green wheat or rye, but the laſt is beſt, and they are as effectual; and let her not eat her clean, for that is very unwholeſome, and will dry up her milk.

When ſhe has foaled and lickedher foal, milk and ſtroak her before the colt ſucks, which will both cauſe her to bring down her milk and make it to multiply, and keep it ſo that it do not clod; and in caſe ſhe becomes dry, if there be need, boil as much milk as you can get from her with the leaves of *lavender* and *ſpike*, and bathe the udder with it warm, till it be broken, and the knobs and knots diſſolved: Her water now muſt be white water, which is bran put into water, and give her ſweet maſhes; and a month after foaling, let her have a maſh with ſome *brimſtone* and *ſavin* in it, which will be a great preſervation to the colt, after which, if

ſhe

ſhe be moderately laboured at plough or harrow, both ſhe and the colt will be the better, provided ſhe be kept from raw meats while ſhe remains in the ſtable, which will both increaſe her milk and cauſe her colt to thrive the better; and care muſt be taken not to ſuffer the colt to ſuck her when ſhe is hot, leſt thereby you ſurfeit the colt.

Some are of opinion, that the winter-ſeaſon is a very improper time for foaling, becauſe of the coldneſs of the weather, and ſcarcity of graſs, ſo that the mare muſt neceſſarily be houſed and fed with hard meat, which will dry up her milk, and ſtarve the foal: Yet experience teaches us, that notwithſtanding all this, it is certainly the beſt time both for mare and foal too, being kept in a warm houſe; and as for her milk, ſhe will have plenty, if well fed, and that more nouriſhing than what is got at graſs, which will make him more luſty, of greater bone and ſtature, cleaner limbed, more neatly jointed and hoofed, and in much better liking, than the colt foaled in *May* or *June*, or any other of the hot months; whereas, beſides other inconveniences by the colt's running along with the mare, he becomes ſo ſavage and wild, that if any infirmity ſeizes him, his own unrulineſs being ſo great, the cure may be very difficult; for infinite are the numbers that have periſhed in this kind.

Now in caſe ſome time after the mare has taken horſe, you are uncertain whether ſhe be with foal or not, pour a ſpoonful of cold water or vinegar into her ear, and if ſhe only ſhakes her head, it is a ſign ſhe is with foal; but if ſhe ſhakes her head, body and all, it is a ſign ſhe is not; or if ſhe ſcours, her coat grows ſmooth and ſhining, and that ſhe grows fat, it is alſo a ſign ſhe holds.

In caſe you are deſirous no mare ſhould go barren, in the month of *July*, or the beginning of *Auguſt*, get a mare or two that have not been covered that year

before, and enforcing them to be horſed, when they ſhall be ready to be covered, you muſt turn them, with ſome other which you eſteem not as your beſt horſe, among your ſtud of mares, and ſo he covering that mare or mares you turned in with him into the ſtud, ſhall cauſe the reſt of them, if any of them have not conceived at their firſt coverings, to come to that horſe again; whereby you ſhall be ſure to keep no mare barren all the year, but have a colt of every mare, though not of your beſt horſe. You may ſuffer your horſe to run amongſt your mares three weeks or a month; but if you turn him into your ſtud, putting in no mare with him ready to be covered, he will at his firſt entering beat all the mares, and perhaps hurt thoſe that had conceived before, and ſo do more hurt than good.

Some reckon the beſt *recipe* to bring a mare in ſeaſon and make her retain, is to give her to eat, for the ſpace of eight days before you bring her to the horſe, about two quarts of hemp ſeed in the morning, and the ſame at night; but if ſhe refuſes to eat it, mix with it a little bran or oats, or elſe let her faſt for a while; and if the ſtallion eats alſo of it, it will contribute much to generation.

It is a maxim, that a mare ſhould never be horſed while ſhe is bringing up her foal, becauſe the foal to which ſhe is giving ſuck, as well as that in her belly, will receive prejudice thereby, and the mare her ſelf will be alſo ſooner ſpent; but if you would have your mare covered, let it be ſeven or eight days after ſhe has foaled, that ſhe may have time to cleanſe; and if it may be conveniently done, do not give her the ſtallion till ſhe deſires him, and alſo increaſe, by all means poſſible, that paſſion, by ſtrong feeding, *&c.*

For the producing of *males*, the mare muſt be brought in ſeaſon, and covered very early in the morning, any time from the fourth day of the moon until it be

full, but never in the decreaſe; and thus ſhe will not fail to bring forth a male colt.

Mares, beſides the many diſtempers they are liable to in common with horſes, and which will be found under their ſeveral names, have ſome others, peculiar to their kind only, of which I ſhall ſpeak briefly, and their cure. If your mare be barren, boil good ſtore of the herb *agnus* in the water ſhe drinks; or ſtamp a good handful of leeks with four or five ſpoonfuls of wine, to which put ſome *cantharides*, and ſtrain them all together, with a ſufficient quantity of water to ſerve her two days together, by pouring the ſame into her nature, with a gliſter-pipe made for that purpoſe; and at three days end offer the horſe to her, and if he covers her, waſh her nature twice together with cold water; or take a little quantity of *nitrum*, ſparrow's dung, and turpentine, wrought together, and made like a ſuppoſitory, and putting that into her nature, it will do.

If you would have her fruitful, boil good ſtore of *motherwort* in the water ſhe drinks.

If ſhe loſes her belly, which ſhews a conſumption of the womb, give her a quart of brine to drink, having *mugwort* boiled therein.

If through good keeping ſhe forſakes her food, give her for two or three days together, a ball of butter and *agnus caſtus* chopped together.

If ſhe be ſubject to caſt her foal, keep her at graſs very warm, and once a week give her a good warm maſh of drink, which ſecretly knits beyond expectation.

You are to obſerve, that mares go with foal eleven months and as many days as they are years old; as for inſtance, a mare of nine years old, will carry her foal eleven months and nine days; ſo that you may ſo order the covering of your mares, that their foals may be brought forth, if you will, at ſuch time as there is abundance of graſs. See STALLION *and* COLT.

Of

Of STALLIONS.

A Stallion is an ungelt horſe, deſigned for the covering of mares, in order to propagate the ſpecies; and when his ſtones are taken away, and he is gelt, is called a gelding.

Now in the chuſing ſtone-horſes, or ſtallions for mares, you ought to take great care that they neither have moon-eyes, watery-eyes, blood-ſhotten-eyes, ſplents, ſpavins, curbs, nor, if poſſible, any natural imperfection of any kind whatſoever; for if they have, the colts will take them hereditarily from their parents.

But let them be the beſt, ableſt, higheſt ſpirited, faireſt coloured, and fineſt ſhaped; and a perſon ſhould inform himſelf of all natural defects in them, of which none are free.

As for his age, he ought not to be younger, to cover a mare, than four years old, from which time forward he will beget colts till twenty.

Let the ſtallion be ſo high fed, as to be full of luſt and vigour, and then brought to the place where the mares are; take off his hinder ſhoes, and let him cover a mare in hand twice or thrice, to keep him ſober; then pull of his bridle, and turn him looſe to the reſt of the mares, which muſt be in a convenient cloſe, with ſtrong fences and good food, and there leave him till he has covered them all, ſo that they will take horſe no more; by which time his courage will be pretty well cooled.

Ten or twelve mares are enough for one horſe in the ſame year; it will alſo be neceſſary to have ſome little ſhed or hovel in the field, to which he may retreat to defend him from the rain, ſun, and wind, which are very weakening to a horſe: let there be likewiſe a rack and manger to feed him in, during his covering-time, and it would not be amiſs if one were

to

to watch him during that time, for fear of any accident, and the better to know how often he covers each mare.

When he has done his duty, take him away from the mares, and remove them into ſome freſh paſture.

Take notice, that when you would have mares covered, either in hand or otherwiſe, that both the ſtallion and mare ought to have the ſame feeding, *viz.* if the horſe be at hay and oats, which are commonly called hard meats, the mare ſhould be alſo at hard meat, otherwiſe ſhe will not be ſo fit to hold.

In the like manner, if the ſtallion be at graſs, you muſt alſo put the mare to graſs.

Thoſe mares which are in middling caſe, conceive the moſt eaſily; whereas thoſe that are very fat, hold with great difficulty; thoſe of them that are hot and in ſeaſon, retain a great deal better; their heat exciting the ſtallion, who, on his part, performs the action with greater vigour and ardour.

And when you cover a mare in hand, in order that ſhe may the more certainly hold, let the ſtallion and the mare be ſo placed in the ſtable, that they may ſee each other, keeping them ſo for ſome time, which will animate them both, and then they will hardly fail to generate.

For the ordering of a ſtallion, ſome give the following inſtructions.

Feed the ſtallion for three months at leaſt, before he is to cover, with good oats, peaſe, or beans, or with coarſe bread, and a little hay, but a good deal of wheat ſtraw; carrying him twice a day out to water, walking him up and down for an hour after he has drank, but without making him ſweat.

If the ſtallion be not thus brought into wind before he covers, he will be in danger of becoming purſey, and broken winded; and if he be not well fed, he will not be able to perform his taſk, or at beſt the colts

would

would be but pitiful and weak ones; and though you ſhould take great care to nouriſh him, yet you will take him in again very weak.

If you put him to many mares, he will not ſerve you ſo long, but his mane and tail will fall away by reaſon of poverty, and it will be a difficult matter to bring him to a good condition of body, againſt the year following.

He ought to have mares according to his ſtrength, as twelve or fifteen, or at moſt not above twenty.

Of STABLES.

AS to the ſituation of a ſtable, it ſhould be in a good air, and upon hard, firm, and dry ground, that in the winter the horſe may come and go clean in and out; and, if it may be, it will be beſt if it be ſituated upon an aſcent, that the urine, foul water, or any wet, may be conveyed away by trenches or ſinks cut out for that purpoſe.

By no means let there be any hen-rooſts, hog-ſties, or houſes of eaſement, or any other filthy ſmells near it, for hen-dung or feathers ſwallowed, oftentimes proves mortal, and the ill air of a jakes ſometimes cauſes blindneſs; and the ſmell of ſwine is apt to breed the *farcin*; and there is no animal that delights more in cleanlineſs, nor is more offended at unwholeſome ſavours than a horſe.

Brick is better for building ſtables than *ſtone*, the latter being ſubject to ſweating in wet weather, and the dampneſs and moiſture cauſes rheums and catarrhs.

Let the walls be of a good convenient thickneſs, at leaſt a brick and half or two bricks thick, both for the ſake of ſafety and warmth in winter, and to defend him from being annoy'd with the heat in ſummer, which would hinder his digeſting his food.

It

It will be proper to have windows both on the eaſt and on the north ſides, that he may have the benefit of the north air in ſummer, and of the morning ſun from the eaſt in the winter.

Let the windows be glazed, and if they be faſhed it will not only be the handſomer, but will be more convenient to let in air at pleaſure: and let there be cloſe wooden ſhutters, that you may darken the ſtable in the middle of the day, which will incline the horſe to take his reſt as well in the day as in the night.

That part of the floor on which the horſe is to ſtand ſhould be made of oaken planks, for they will be both eaſier and warmer for the horſe to lie upon than ſtones; and be ſure to lay them level, for if they are laid higher before than behind, (as they generally are in Inns and Horſe-courſer's ſtables, that their horſes may appear to more advantage in ſtature) his hinder legs will ſwell, and he can never lie eaſily, becauſe his hinder parts will be ſtill ſlipping down.

Lay the planks croſs-ways, and not length-ways, and ſink a good trench underneath them, which may receive the urine through holes bored in the planks, and convey it into ſome common receptacle.

Raiſe the ground behind him even with the planks, that he may continually ſtand upon a level; and let the floor behind him be paved with ſmall pebble; and be ſure to let that part of the ſtable where the rack ſtands be well wainſcotted.

Place two rings at each ſide of his ſtall for his halter to run through, which ſhould have a light wooden logger at the bottom of it, to poiſe it perpendicularly, but not ſo heavy as to tire the horſe, or to hinder him from eating.

Some recommend a drawer or locker made in the wainſcot partition, rather than a fixt manger, for him to eat his corn out of, which may be taken out to cleanſe at pleaſure.

This need not be made large, and therefore will no take up much room.

They alſo adviſe not to make any rack at all, but inſtead of it, (according to the *Italian* faſhion) to give the horſe his hay on the ground, upon the litter; or elſe you may, if you pleaſe, nail ſome boards in the form of a trough, in which you may put his hay, and the boards will prevent him from trampling on and ſpoiling it.

Some again diſapprove of this way of feeding, thinking it may ſpoil his cheſt, and that his blowing upon his hay will make it nauſeous to his palate: but others again anſwer, that as to the ſpoiling of his cheſt, it rather ſtrengthens it and makes it firm; whereas on the contrary, the lifting of his head up high to the rack, will make him withy cragged. But the way before-mentioned he will feed as he lies, which will be for his eaſe. And as to the hay, that may be given him but by ſmall quantities at a time; and there will be this advantage in receiving his hay on the ground, the prone poſture will cleanſe his head from rheum or poſe, which he may happen by any ways to have gotten, and induce him to ſneeze and throw out all manner of watery humours that may annoy his head.

If you have ſtable-room enough you may make partitions, and at the head, towards the manger, board them to that height that one horſe may not moleſt or ſmell to another, allowing each horſe room enough to turn about and lie down at pleaſure.

One of the ſtalls may be made convenient for your groom to lie in, in caſe of a match, or the ſickneſs of a horſe.

Behind the horſes may be made a range of preſſes, with pegs to hang up ſaddles, bridles, *&c.* and ſhelves for other utenſils, po s of ointment, *&c.*

And in order that the ſtable may not be encumbered with oat bins, you may make uſe of the method of a cer-

a certain Gentleman, deſcribed by Dr. *Plott* in his hiſtory of *Oxfordſhire*, as follows.

Make a conveniency to let the oats down from above, out of a veſſel like the hopper of a mill, whence they fall into a ſquare pipe let into the wall, of about four inches diagonal, which comes down into a cupboard, alſo ſet into the wall, but with it's end ſo near the bottom, that there ſhall never be above a gallon or ſuch a quantity in the cupboard at a time, which being taken away and given to the horſes, another gallon preſently ſucceeds, ſo that in the lower part of the ſtable where the horſes ſtand there is not an inch of room taken up for the whole proviſion of oats; which hath alſo this further conveniency, that by this motion the oats are kept conſtantly ſweet, the taking away of one gallon moving the whole maſs above, which otherwiſe, being laid in great quantities, would be apt to grow muſty.

There may alſo be two of theſe made, the one for oats and the other for ſplit beans, and both let into the range of preſſes, the oats and beans being ſeparated above by partitions.

Let the floor over the ſtable be cieled, whether you make it a granery, or a lodging-room for your groom, that no duſt may fall from it upon your horſes.

There are alſo other requiſites, as a dung-yard, a pump, a conduit; and if ſome pond or running river were near, it were the better.

Of BOWLING.

THE firſt and greateſt cunning to be obſerved in bowling, is the right chuſing your bowl, which muſt be ſuitable to the ground, you deſign to run on. Thus for cloſe alleys your beſt choice is the flat bowl. 2. For open grounds of advantage, the round

round byaſſed bowl. 3. For green ſwards that are plain and level, the bowl that is as round as a ball.

The next thing that requires your care, is the chuſing out your ground, and preventing the winding hangings, and many turning advantages of the ſame, whether it be in open wide places, as bares and bowling-greens, or in cloſe bowling alleys.

Laſtly, have your judgment about you, to obſerve and diſtinguiſh the riſings, fallings, and advantages of the places where you bowl: have your wits about you, to avoid being rookt of your money; and have your underſtanding about you, to know your beſt time and opportunity for this recreation; and finally, a ſtudious care of your words and paſſions; and then bowl away, and you may deſerve, *well have you bowled indeed.*

Courſing with GREYHOUNDS.

IS a recreation in great eſteem with many gentlemen. It affords greater pleaſure than hunting in ſome reſpects. As, firſt, becauſe it is ſooner ended. Secondly, it does not require ſo much toil. Thirdly, the game for the moſt part always in ſight. Fourthly in regard to the delicate qualities and ſhape of the greyhound.

There are three ſeveral courſes with greyhounds, *viz.* at the deer, at the hare, and at the fox.

For the deer there are two ſorts of courſes, the one in the paddock, and the other either in the foreſt or purlieu.

For the paddock, there muſt be the greyhound, and the terrier, which is a kind of mongrel greyhound, whoſe buſineſs is to drive away the deer before the greyhounds are ſlipt, and moſt uſually a brace or leaſh are let ſlip; ſeldom more than two braces.

Courſing

HARE-HUNTING.

THE beſt way in this, is to go and find out one ſitting, which is eaſily done by walking croſs the lands, either ſtubble, fallow or corn, and caſting your eye up and down; for in the ſummer ſeaſon they frequent ſuch places for fear of ticks, which are common in woods; alſo the rain and the fall of the leaf offend them.

The reſt of the year, you muſt beat up and down with poles to ſtart them out of their forms and retreats, and ſome hares will not ſtir, until they are almoſt touched, and it is a certain ſign that ſuch hares will make an excellent courſe.

If a hare ſit near any cloſe or covert, and have her head towards the ſame with a fair field behind her, you may ride with as much company as you have between her and the covert before ſhe put up, and then ſhe is likely to make her courſe towards the champain, for ſhe ſeldom takes the ſame way that her head is, when ſhe ſits in her form.

When a hare is firſt ſtarted, you give her ground or law, which commonly is twelveſcore yards or more, according to the ground where ſhe ſits, or elſe you loſe much of your ſport by putting an end to it too ſoon; and it is very pleaſant to ſee the turnings and windings, that the hare will make to ſave her ſelf, which ſometimes prove effectual to her.

Hare, is a beaſt of venery, or the foreſt, peculiarly ſo termed in the ſecond year of her age.

There are four ſorts of *hares*; ſome live in the mountains, ſome in the fields, ſome in marſhes, ſome every where, without any certain place of abode. The *mountain hares* are the ſwifteſt, the *field hares* are not ſo nimble, and thoſe of the *marſhes* are the ſloweſt; but the wandering *hares* are moſt dangerous to follow, for they are ſo cunning in the ways and mazes of the fields,

running

running up the hills and rocks, becauſe by cuſtom they know a nearer way with other tricks, to the confuſion of the dogs, and diſcouragement of the Hunters.

It will not be improper to give a deſcription of the parts of a hare, ſince it is admirable to behold how every limb and member of this beaſt is compoſed for celerity.

In the firſt place the head is round, nimble, ſhort, yet of convenient length, and apt to turn every way.

The ears are long and lofty, like thoſe of an aſs; for nature hath ſo provided, that every fearful and unarmed creature ſhould have long and large ears, that by hearing it might prevent it's enemies, and ſave itſelf by flight: the lips continually move, while they are aſleep as well as awake; and from the ſlit they have in the middle of their noſe comes the name of *hare-lips*, found in ſome men.

The neck of a hare is long, ſmall, round, ſoft, and flexible; the ſhoulder-bone ſtrait and broad, for her more eaſy turning; her legs before ſoft, and ſtand broader behind than before, and the hinder legs longer than the fore legs: the breaſt is not narrow, but fitted to take more breath than any other beaſt of that bigneſs: It has a nimble back and a fleſhy belly, tender loins, hollow ſides, fat buttocks filled up, and ſtrong and nervous knees. Their eyes are brown, and they are ſubtil, but not bold; ſeldom looking forward, becauſe they go by leaps: their eye-lids coming from their brows, are too ſhort to cover their eyes, ſo that when they ſleep they open them.

They have certain little bladders in their belly, filled with matter, out of which both ſexes ſuck a certain humour and anoint their bodies all over with, by which they are defended againſt rain.

Tho' their ſight is dim, yet they have an indefatigable faculty of ſeeing; ſo that the countenance of it,

tho'

tho' but in a mean degree, makes amends for the want of the excellency of it in them.

They feed abroad, becauſe they would conceal their forms, and never drink, but content themſelves with dew, which makes them frequently grow rotten.

As it is ſaid before, every limb of a hare is compoſed for ſwiftneſs, and therefore ſhe never walks or treads, but jumps; her ears lead her the way in the chace, for with one of them ſhe hearkeneth to the cry of the dogs, and the other ſhe ſtretches forth like a ſail, to help forward her courſe; always ſtretching her hinder beyond her former, and yet not hindering them at all; and in paths and highways ſhe runs more ſpeedily.

The hares of the mountains often exerciſe themſelves in the vallies and plains, and through practice grow acquainted with the neareſt ways to their forms, or conſtant places of abode; ſo that when at any time they are hunted in the fields, ſuch is their ſubtil dodging, that they will dally with the Huntſman till they ſeem to be almoſt taken, and then on a ſudden take the neareſt way to the mountains, and ſo take ſanctuary in the inacceſſable places, to which neither dogs nor horſes can or dare aſcend.

Hares which frequent buſhes and brakes are not able to endure labour, nor are very ſwift, becauſe of the pain in their feet, growing fat by means of idleneſs, and not uſing themſelves to running.

The *field hare* being leaner of body, and oftner chaſed, is more difficultly taken, by reaſon of her ſingular agility; for when ſhe begins her courſe, ſhe bounds up from the ground as if ſhe flew, afterwards paſſes through brambles, over thick buſhes and hedges, with all expedition; and if ſhe cometh into deep graſs or corn, ſhe eaſily delivers herſelf and ſlides through it, always holding up one ear, and bending it at pleaſure, to be the moderator of her chace.

Neither

Neither is ſhe improvident and prodigal of her ſtrength, as to ſpend it all in one courſe, but ſhe has regard to the force of her purſuer, who if he be ſlow and ſluggiſh, ſhe is not profuſe of her ſtrength, nor uſes her utmoſt ſwiftneſs, but only advances gently before the dogs, yet ſafely from their clutches, reſerving her greateſt ſtrength for the time of her greateſt neceſſity, knowing ſhe can out-run the dogs at her pleaſure, and therefore will not ſtrain herſelf more than ſhe is urged.

But if ſhe be perſued by a dog that is ſwifter than then ſhe puts on with all the force ſhe can, and having once left the hunters and dogs a great way behind her, ſhe makes to ſome little hill, or riſing ground, where ſhe raiſes herſelf upon her hinder legs, that thereby ſhe may obſerve how far off, or how near her purſuers are.

The younger hares, by reaſon of their weak limbs, tread heavier on the earth than the older, and therefore leave the greater ſcent behind them.

At a year old they run very ſwiftly, and their ſcent is ſtronger in the woods than in the plain fields; and if they lie down on the earth (as they love to do) in red fallow grounds, they are eaſily deſcried.

Their footſteps in winter are more apparent than in ſummer, becauſe as the nights are longer, they travel farther; neither do they ſcent in winter mornings ſo ſoon as it is day, till the froſt is a little thawed; but eſpecially their footſteps are uncertain at the full of the moon, for then they leap and play together; ſcattering, or putting out their ſcent or ſavour; and in the ſpring-time alſo, when they do engender, they confound one another's footſteps by multitudes.

Hares and rabbets are miſchievous to nurſeries and newly planted orchards, by peeling off the bark of the plants; for the prevention of which ſome bind ropes about

about the trees to a ſufficient height; ſome daub them with tar, which being of it ſelf hurtful to young plants, the miſchief is prevented by mixing with it any kind of greaſe, and boiling it over a fire, ſo as both may incorporate; then with a bruſh or little broom, daub over the ſtem of the tree as high as a rabbet or hare can reach; do this in *November*, and it will ſecure the trees for that whole year, it being in the winter-time only in which they feed upon the bark.

Alſo ſome thin ſtuff out of a houſe of office, or the thick tempered with water, has been often applied with good ſucceſs; or the white waſh made uſe of by Plaiſterers for whiting houſes, done once a year over the trees with a bruſh, will preſerve them from hares, deer, and other animals.

As for ſuch hares as are bred in warrens, the warreners have a crafty device to fatten them, which has been found by experience to be effectual; and that is, by putting wax into their ears to make them deaf, and then turning them into the place where they are to feed, where, being freed from the fear of hounds, and for want of hearing, they grow fat before others of their kind.

It is generally believed, that a hare naturally knows the change of weather from one twenty-four hours to another.

When ſhe goes to her form, ſhe will ſuffer the dew to touch her as little as ſhe can, but takes the high-ways and beaten paths: again when ſhe riſes out of her form, if ſhe couches her ears and ſcut, and runs not very faſt at firſt, it is an infallible ſign that ſhe is old and crafty.

They go to buck commonly in *January*, *February*, and *March*, and ſometimes all the warm months; ſometimes ſeeking the buck at ſeven or eight miles diſtant from

from the place they uſually ſit at, following the high-ways, &c.

To diſtinguiſh a male hare from the female, you may know him as you hunt him to his form, by his beating the hard high-ways: he alſo feeds farther out in the plains, and makes his doublings and croſſings much wider, and of greater compaſs, than the female doth; whereas the female will keep cloſe by ſome covert ſide, turning and winding in the buſhes like a coney; and if ſhe go to relief in the corn fields, ſhe ſeldom croſſes over the furrow, but follows them along, ſtaying upon the thickeſt tufts of corn to feed.

You may likewiſe know a buck at his riſing out of his form, by his hinder parts, which are more upon the whitiſh, and his ſhoulders, before he riſes, will be redder than the doe's, having ſome looſe long hairs growing on them.

You may likewiſe know a buck at his riſing out of his form, by his hinder parts, which are more upon the whitiſh, and his ſhoulders, before he riſes, will be redder than the doe's, having ſome looſe long hairs growing on them.

Again, his head is ſhorter and better truſſed, his hairs about his lips longer, and his ears ſhorter and more grey: the hairs upon the female's chine are of a blackiſh grey.

And beſides, when hounds hunt a female hare, ſhe will uſe more croſſing and doubling, ſeldom making out end-ways before the hounds; whereas the male acts contrarily, for having once made a turn or two about his form, then farewel hounds, for he will frequently lead them five or ſix miles before ever he will turn his head.

When you ſee that your hounds have found where a hare hath paſſed to relief upon the high-way-ſide, and hath much doubled and croſſed upon dry places, and never much broken out nor relieved in the corn, it

is a ſign ſhe is but lately come thither; and then commonly ſhe will ſtay upon ſome high place to look about her, and to chuſe out a place to form in, which ſhe will be loth to part with.

The craft and ſubtilty of a HARE.

As of all chaces the *hare* makes the greateſt paſtime and pleaſure, ſo it is a great delight and ſatisfaction to ſee the craft of this ſmall animal for her ſelf-preſervation.

And the better to underſtand them, conſider what weather it is: if it be rainy, then the hare will hold the high ways more than at any other time, and if ſhe come to the ſide of any young grove or ſpring, ſhe will ſcarcely enter, but ſquat down by the ſide of it till the hounds have over-ſhot her, and then ſhe will return, the very ſame way ſhe came, to the place from whence ſhe was ſtarted, and will not go by the way into any covert, for fear of the wet and dew that hangs upon the boughs.

In this caſe the Huntſman ought to ſtay an hundred paces before he comes to the wood-ſide, by which means he will perceive whether ſhe return as aforeſaid, which if ſhe do, he muſt halloo in his hounds, and call them back, and that preſently, that the hounds may not think it the counter ſhe came firſt.

The next thing that is to be obſerved, is the place where the hare ſits, and upon what wind ſhe makes her form, either upon the north or ſouth wind; ſhe will not willingly run into the wind, but run up on a-ſide, or down the wind; but if ſhe form in the water, it is a ſign ſhe is foul and meaſled: if you hunt ſuch a one, have a ſpecial regard all the day to the brook-ſides, for there, and near plaſhes, ſhe will make all her croſſings, doublings, *&c.*

Some *hares* have been ſo crafty, that as ſoon as they have heard the ſound of the horn, they would inſtantly ſtart

ſtart out of their form, tho' it was the diſtance of a quarter of a mile, and go and ſwim in ſome pool, and reſt upon ſome ruſh bed in the midſt of it; and would not ſtir from thence till they have heard the horn again, and then have ſtarted out again, ſwimming to land, and have ſtood up before the hounds four hours before they could kill them, ſwimming and uſing all ſubtilties and croſſings in the water.

Nay, ſuch is the natural craft and ſubtilty of a hare, that ſometimes, after ſhe has been hunted three hours, ſhe will ſtart a freſh hare, and ſquat in the ſame form.

Others having been hunted a conſiderable time, will creep under the door of a ſheep-coat, and there hide themſelves among the ſheep, or when they have been hard hunted, will run in among a flock of ſheep, and will by no means be gotten out from among them, till the hounds are coupled up and the ſheep driven into their pens.

Some of them (and that ſeems ſomewhat ſtrange) will take the ground like a coney, and that is called, *going to the vault.*

Some *hares* will go up one ſide of the hedge and come down the other, the thickneſs of the hedge being the only diſtance between the courſes.

A *hare* that has been ſorely hunted, has got upon a quick-ſet hedge, and ran a good way upon the top thereof, and then leap'd off upon the ground.

And they will frequently betake themſelves to furz-buſhes, and will leap from the one to the other, whereby the hounds are frequently in default.

Some affirm that a *hare*, after ſhe has been hunted two hours and more, has at length, to ſave her ſelf, got upon an old wall, ſix foot high from the ground, and hid her ſelf in a hole that was made for ſcaffolding; and that ſome *hares* have ſwam over the rivers *Trent* and *Severn.*

A *hare*

A *hare* is ſuppoſed not to live above ſeven years at the moſt, eſpecially the bucks, and if a buck and a doe ſhall keep one quarter together, they will never ſuffer any ſtrange *hare* to ſit by them; and therefore it is ſaid by way of proverb, *the more you hunt, the more hares you ſhall have:* becauſe when you have killed one *hare*, another will come and poſſeſs his form.

A *hare* hath a greater ſcent, and is more eagerly hunted by the hounds, when ſhe feeds and relieves upon green corn, than at any other time of the year; and yet there are ſome *hares* that naturally give a greater ſcent than others, as the large *wood-hares*; and ſuch as are foul and meaſled keep near to the waters: but the ſmall red *hare*, which is not much bigger than a *coney*, is neither of ſo ſtrong a ſcent, nor ſo eagerly hunted.

Thoſe *hares* that feed upon the ſmall branches of wild thyme, or ſuch like herbs, are generally very ſwift, and will ſtand long up before the hounds.

Again, there are ſome *hares* more ſubtil and cunning than others, young *hares* which have never been hunted are fooliſh, and are neither of force nor capacity to uſe ſuch ſubtilties and crafts, but moſt commonly hold on end-ways before the hounds, and oftentimes ſquat and ſtart again, which greatly encourages the hounds, and enters them better than if the *hare* ſhould fly end-ways, as ſometimes they will for five or ſix mile an end.

The females are more crafty and politic than the males, for they double and turn ſhorter than they, which is unpleaſant to the hounds; for it is troubleſome to them to turn ſo often, delighting more in an end-way chace, running with all their force: for thoſe *hares* which double and croſs ſo often, it is requiſite at default, to caſt the greater compaſs about, when you beat to make it out; for ſo you will find all her ſubtilties, and yet need not ſtick upon any of them, but only

only where ſhe went on forward: by this means you will abate her force, and compel her to need doubling and croſſing.

How to enter Hounds to a HARE.

Let the Huntſman be ſure in the firſt place to make them very well acquainted with himſelf and his voice, and let them underſtand the horn, which he ſhould never blow but when there is good cauſe for it.

When you enter a young kennel of hounds, have a ſpecial regard to the country where you make the firſt quarry, for ſo they are like to ſucceed accordingly; ſince their being entered firſt in a plain and champain country, will make them ever after delight more to hunt therein than elſewhere; and it is the ſame with the coverts.

In order to have the beſt hounds, uſe them to all kinds of hunting, yet do not oblige them to hunt in the morning, by reaſon of the dew and moiſture of the earth; and beſides, if they be afterwards hunted in the heat of the day, they will ſoon give over the chaſe. Neither will they call on willingly nor chearfully, but ſeek out the ſhades to ſleep in.

But yet many are of opinion, that to hunt both early and late in the morning, by trayling, profits the hounds as to the uſe of their noſes; and by keeping them ſometimes in the heat of the day, or till night incites courage in them.

The beſt ſeaſon to enter young hounds, is in *September* and *October*, for then the weather is temperate, and neither too hot nor too cold; and this is the ſeaſon to find young *hares* that have never been hunted, which are ſilly, and ignorant of the politic croſſings, doublings, *&c.* of their ſires, running commonly endways, frequently ſquatting, and as often ſtarting; by which encouragement the hounds are the better entered.

Some

Some *hares* hold the high-beaten ways only, where the hounds can have no ſcent; therefore when the Huntſman finds his hounds at a default in the high-way, let him hunt on until he find where the *hare* hath broken from the highway, or hath found ſome dale or freſh place where the hounds may recover ſcent, looking narrowly on the ground as he goes, to ſee to find the footing or pricking of the *hare*.

There are other places wherein a hound can find no ſcent; and that is, in fat and rotten ground, which ſticks to the feet of the *hare*; and this is called *carrying*, and ſo of conſequence ſhe leaves no ſcent behind her.

There are alſo certain months in the year in which a hound can find no ſcent, and that is in the ſpring-time, by reaſon of the fragrant ſcent of flowers, and the like.

But avoid hunting in hard froſty weather as much as you can, for that will be apt to ſurbate or ſounder your hounds, and cauſe them to loſe their claws; beſides, at that time a *hare* runs better than at other times, the ſoles of her feet being hairy.

In a word, the beſt way of entering your hounds, is with the aſſiſtance of old ſtaunch hounds, ſo they will be better learned to caſt for it at a doubling or default.

What time of the year is beſt for Hare *hunting; how to find her, ſtart her, and chaſe her.*

The beſt time to begin *hare-hunting*, is about the middle of *September*, and to end towards the latter end of *February*, leſt you deſtroy the early brood of leverets.

And beſides, when the winter comes on, the moiſtneſs and coolneſs of the earth increaſes, which is agreeable to the nature of the hounds, and very acceptable. they not liking extremes either of hot or cold weather.

Thoſe hounds that are two years old and upwards, may be exerciſed three times a week; and the hunting ſo often will do them good, provided they be well

fed; and they may be kept the greateſt part of the day, both to try their ſtoutneſs, and to make them ſtout.

If any hound ſhall have found the tryal of a *hare*, when ſhe hath relieved that night, the Huntſman ought not to be too haſty, but let the hounds make it themſelves; and when he perceives that they begin to draw in together, and to call on freſhly, then he ought to encourage them, eſpecially that hound which hunteth beſt, frequently calling him by his name.

Here you may take notice, that a *hare* leaveth better ſcent when ſhe goes to relief than when ſhe goeth towards her form; for when ſhe relieves in the field, ſhe coucheth her body low upon the ground, paſſing often over one piece of ground, to find where the beſt food lies, and thus leaveth the beſt ſcent, croſſing alſo ſometimes: beſides, when ſhe goes to her form, ſhe commonly takes the highways, doubling, croſſing, and leaping as lightly as ſhe can; in which places the hounds can have no ſcent by reaſon of the duſt, *&c.* and yet they will ſquat by the ſides of highways, and therefore let the huntſman beat very well the ſides of thoſe highways.

Now having found where a hare hath relieved in ſome paſture or corn-field, you muſt then conſider the ſeaſon of the year, and what weather it is; for if it be in the ſpring-time or ſummer, a hare will not then ſet in buſhes, becauſe they are frequently infeſted with piſmires, ſnakes, and adders; but will ſet in corn-fields and open places.

In the winter-time, they ſet near towns and villages, in tufts of thorns and brambles, eſpecially when the wind is northerly or ſoutherly.

According to the ſeaſon and nature of the place where the hare is accuſtomed to ſit, there beat with your hounds, and ſtart her; which is much better ſport than trayling of her from her relief to her form.

After

After the hare has been ſtarted, and is on foot, then ſtep in where you ſaw her paſs, and halloo in your hounds, until they have all undertaken it, and go on with it in full cry; then recheat to them with your horn, following fair and ſoftly at firſt, making not too much noiſe either with horn or voice; for at the firſt, hounds are apt to overſhoot the chaſe thro' too much heat.

But when they have run the ſpace of an hour, and you ſee the hounds are well in with it, and ſtick well upon it, then you may come in nearer with the hounds, becauſe by that time their heat will be cooled, and they will hunt more ſoberly.

But, above all things, mark the firſt doubling, which muſt be your direction for the whole day; for all the doublings that ſhe ſhall make afterwards will be like the former, and according to the policies that you ſhall ſee her uſe, and the place where you hunt, you muſt make your compaſſes great or little, long or ſhort, to help the defaults, always ſeeking the moiſteſt and moſt commodious places for the hounds to ſcent in.

To conclude; thoſe who delight in hunting the hare, muſt riſe early, leſt they be deprived of the ſcent of her foot-ſteps, by which means the dogs will be incapacitated to follow their game; for the nature of the ſcent is ſuch that it will not remain long, but ſuddenly in a manner every hour vaniſheth away.

The laws obſerved in courſing the HARE.

The following were eſtabliſhed by the Duke of *Norfolk*, in the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, and were ſubſcribed unto by the chief gentry, and thence held authentic.

1. That he that is choſen Fewterer, or that lets looſe the greyhounds, ſhall receive the greyhounds matched to run together into his leaſh as ſoon as he comes into the field, and follow next to the hare-finder,

or he who is to ſtart the hare until he come unto the form, and no horſeman or footman is to go before, or on any ſide but directly behind, for the ſpace of about forty yards.

2. You ought not to courſe a hare with more than a brace of greyhounds.

3. The hare-finder ought to give the hare three ſo-hoes before he put her from her form or ſeat, to the end the dogs may gaze about, and attend her ſtarting.

4. They ought to have twelveſcore yards law before the dogs are looſed, unleſs there be danger of loſing her.

5. That dog that gives the firſt turn, if after that there be neither cote, ſlip, or wrench, he wins the wager.

6. If one dog gives the firſt turn, and the other bears the hare, he that bears the hare ſhall win the wager.

7. A go by, or bearing the hare, is accounted equivalent to two turns.

8. If neither dog turn the hare, he that leads laſt to the covert wins.

9. If one dog turns the hare, ſerves himſelf and turns her again, it is much as a cote, and a cote is eſteemed two turns.

10. If all the courſe be equal, he that bears the hare ſhall win; and if he be not born, the courſe ſhall be adjudged dead.

11. If a dog take fall in a courſe, and yet perform his part, he may challenge the advantage of a turn more than he gave.

12. If a dog turn the hare, ſerve himſelf, and give divers cotes, and yet in the end ſtand ſtill in the field, the other dog, if he turns home to the coverts, altho' he gives no turn, ſhall be adjudged to win the wager.

13. If by misfortune, a dog be rid over in his courſe, the courſe is void, and to ſay the truth, he that did the miſchief ought to make reparation for the damage.

14. If

14. If a dog give the firſt and laſt turn, and there be no other advantage betwixt them, he that gives the odd turn ſhall win.

15. A cote is when the greyhound goeth end-ways by his fellow, and gives the hare a turn.

16. A cote ſerves for two turns, and two trippings or jerkins for a cote; and if ſhe turneth not quite about ſhe only wrencheth.

17. If there be no cotes given between a brace of greyhounds but that one of them ſerves the other at turning: then he that gives the hare moſt turns wins the wager: and if one gives as may turns as the other, then he that beareth the hare wins the wager.

18. Sometimes the hare doth not turn, but wrench; for ſhe is not properly ſaid to turn, except ſhe turn as it were round, and two wrenches ſtand for a turn.

19. He that comes in firſt to the death of the hare, takes her up, and ſaves her from breaking, cheriſheth the dogs, and cleanſes their mouths from the wool, is adjudged to have the hare for his pains.

20. Thoſe that are judges of the leaſh, muſt give their judgment preſently before they depart out of the field.

Courſing the FOX.

IN courſing a fox, no other art is required than ſtanding cloſe, and on a clear wind on the outſide of ſome grove, where you are to expect his coming out, and then give him head enough, otherwiſe he will turn back to the covert: for the ſloweſt greyhound will be ſwift enough to overtake him; and all the hazzard of this courſe, is the ſpoiling your dog by the fox, which oftentime happens; and for this reaſon, you ſhould not run any that are worth much at this chaſe; but

but ſuch that are hard bitten dogs that will ſeize any thing.

Fox Hunting.

The ſhape and proportion of this beaſt is ſo well known, being ſo common that it is needleſs to deſcribe him.

His nature is in may reſpects like that of a wolf, for they bring as many cubs at a litter the one as the other; but in this they differ, the fox littering deep under the ground, but the wolf doth not.

A bitch fox is very difficult to be taken when ſhe is bragged and with cub, for then ſhe will lie near her burrow, into which ſhe runs, upon hearing the leaſt noiſe: and indeed at any time it is ſomewhat difficult, for the fox (and ſo the wolf) is a very ſubtil crafty creature.

Fox hunting is a very pleaſant exerciſe, for by reaſon of his ſtrong, hot ſcent, he makes an excellent cry: and as his ſcent is hotteſt at hand, ſo it dies the ſooneſt.

And beſides he never flies far before the hounds truſting not to his legs, ſtrength, or champain grounds; but ſtrongeſt coverts. When he can no longer ſtand before the ground, he then taketh earth, and muſt be dug out.

If greyhounds courſe him on a plain, his laſt refuge is to piſs on his tail, and flap it in their faces as they come near him; and ſometimes ſquirting his thicker excrements upon them, to make them give over the courſe or purſuit.

When a bitch fox goes a clicketting and ſeeking for a dog, ſhe cries with a hollow voice, not unlike the howling of a mad dog, and in the ſame manner ſhe cries, when ſhe miſſes any of her cubs; but never makes any cry at all when ſhe is killing, but defends herſelf to the laſt gaſp.

A fox will prey upon any thing he can overcome, and

and will feed upon any ſort of carrion: but their dainties, and the food they moſt delight in, is poultry.

They are very injurious and deſtructive to coney warrens and will ſometimes kill hares by deceit and ſubtilty; but not by ſwift running.

The fox is taken with hounds greyhounds, terriers, nets, and gins.

For HUNTING *above ground.*

To hunt a fox with hounds you muſt draw about groves thickets, and buſhes, near villages: for in ſuch places he lurks to prey upon poultry, &c; but if you can find one it will be neceſſary to ſtop up his earth, the night before you intend to hunt and that about midnight, for then he goes out to prey; and this muſt be done by laying two white ſticks acroſs in his way, which will make him imagine it to be ſome gin or trap laid for him, or elſe they may be ſtopped up cloſe with black thorns and earth together.

The beſt ſeaſon for hunting a fox above ground, is in *January, February* and *March*, for then you ſhall beſt ſee your hounds hunting, and beſt find his earthing; and beſides at thoſe times the fox's ſkin is beſt in ſeaſon.

Again the hounds hunt the fox beſt in the coldeſt weather, becauſe he leaveth a very ſtrong ſcent behind him; yet in cold weather it chills faſteſt.

At firſt only caſt off your ſure finders, and as the drag mends, ſo add more as you dare truſt them, avoid caſting off too many hounds at once; becauſe woods and coverts are full of ſundry chaces, and ſo you may engage them in too many at one time.

Let ſuch as you caſt off at firſt, be old ſtaunch hounds which are ſure, and if you hear ſuch a hound call on merrily, you may caſt off ſome others to him, and when they run it on the full cry, caſt off the reſt, and thus you ſhall compleat your paſtime.

The words of comfort are the ſame which are uſed

in other chaces, attended with the ſame hallooings, and other ceremonies.

The hounds ſhould be left to kill the fox themſelves, and to worry and tear him as much as they pleaſe: ſome hounds will eat him with eagerneſs.

When he is dead hang him at the end of a pikeſtaff, and halloo in all your hounds to bay him; but reward them not with any thing belonging to the fox: for it is not good, neither will the hounds in common eat it.

Of HUNTING *a* FOX *under ground.*

If in caſe a fox does ſo far eſcape as to earth, countrymen muſt be got together with ſhovels, ſpades, mattocks, pickaxes, &c. to dig him out, if they think the earth not too great.

They make their earths as near as they can in ground that is hard to dig, as in clay, ſtony ground, or amongſt the roots of trees; and their earths have commonly but one hole; and that is ſtraight a long way in before you come at their couch.

Sometimes craftily they take poſſeſſion of a badger's old borrow, which hath a variety of chambers, holes, and angles.

Now to facilitate this way of hunting the fox: the huntſman muſt be provided with one or two terriers to put into the earth after him, that is to fix him into an angle: for the earth often conſiſts of many angles: the uſe of the terrier is to know where he lies, for as ſoon as he finds him he continues baying or barking, ſo that which way the noiſe is heard that way dig to him.

But to know the manner of entering and farther uſe of theſe ſorts of dogs.

However I ſhall here add, that in the firſt place you muſt have ſuch as are able to dig, ſo your terriers muſt be garniſhed with bells hung in collars, to make the fox

bolt

bolt the ſooner; beſides the collars will be ſome ſmall defence to the terriers.

The inſtruments to dig withal are theſe; a ſharp pointed ſpade, which ſerves to begin the trench, where the ground is hardeſt, and broader tools will not ſo well enter; the round hollowed ſpade, which is uſeful to dig among roots, having very ſharp edges; the broad flat ſpade to dig withal, when the trench has been pretty well opened, and the ground ſofter; mattocks and pickaxes to dig in hard ground, where a ſpade will do but little ſervice; the coal rake to cleanſe the hole, and to keep it from ſtopping up; clamps, wherewith you may take either fox or badger out alive to make ſport with afterwards.

And it would be very convenient to have a pail of water to refreſh your terriers with, after they are come out of the earth to take breath.

After this manner you may beſiege a fox, &c. in their ſtrongeſt holes and caſtles, and may break their caſemates, platforms, parapets, and work to them with mines and countermines till you have obtained what you deſired.

Of Dogs.

A DOG is a domeſtic animal, made uſe of for the guard of a houſe, and for hunting: the dog is the ſymbol of fidelity, and amongſt all irrational animals, may deſervedly claim a moſt particular preference, both for their love and ſervices to mankind; uſing humilitations and proſtrations, as the only means to pacify their angry maſters who beat them, and turn revenge, after beating, into a more fervent love.

As there is no country in the world where there is not plenty of dogs, ſo no animals can boaſt of a greater variety, both in kind and ſhape; ſome being for buck, others for bear, bull, boar, and ſome for the hare,

coney, and hedge-hog, while others are for other uſes, according to their various natures, properties and kinds; neither are the uſes and kinds of them ſo general, but their bringing up is alſo as eaſy, there being no great regard to be had as to their food, for they will eat any thing but the fleſh of their own ſpecies, which cannot be ſo dreſſed by the art of man, but they will find it out by their ſmelling, and ſo avoid it.

Now becauſe ſome Authors ſeem to lay a ſtreſs upon the colour of dogs, we ſhall briefly inſert what they ſay, and begin with the white coloured dogs; which for the moſt part are not good to run after all ſorts of beaſts; but are excellent for the ſtag, eſpecially if they be all over white, that is, pupped without any ſpot upon them: and experience has taught people to put a value upon ſuch dogs, by reaſon of the natural inſtinct they have to perform every thing well they are deſigned for; being curious hunters, having admirable noſes, and very good at ſtratagems: in ſhort, theſe dogs are valued becauſe they are naturally leſs ſubject to diſeaſes than others, by reaſon of the predominancy of flegm in them, which gives them a good temperament of body.

A black hound is not to be deſpiſed, eſpecially if marked with white, and not red ſpots; ſeeing this whiteneſs proceeds from a flegmatic conſtitution, which hinders him from forgetting the leſſon he is taught, and makes him obedient; whereas dogs that have red ſpots are for the moſt part very fiery, and hard to be managed, by reaſon of the bilious humour that prevails, and cauſes this irregularity within them: and therefore a black dog with white ſpots is valuable, being uſually hardy enough, will hunt well, is ſtrong and ſwift, and holds out a long time: he will not forſake the chace, and when you are beating the water for ſport, he will not be frighted at it: and laſtly, he is the more eſteemed, becauſe thoſe diſtempers incident to dogs, ſeldom befal him.

There

There are ſome grey coloured dogs that are good, and others you ought not to meddle with; that is, mongrels, which come from a hound bitch that has been lined by a dog of another kind, or from a bitch of another kind, that has been lined by a hound: hounds cannot be good if they do not entirely retain the nature that is peculiar to them; and when they do, grey dogs are to be coveted, becauſe they are cunning, never faulter, and grow not diſcouraged in the queſt. 'Tis true, their ſenſe of ſmelling is not ſo exquiſite as that of thoſe before mentioned, but they have other qualities which make amends for it; for they are indefatigable in hunting, being of a robuſter nature than others, and heat and cold, which they fear not, is alike to them.

Yellow dogs, are thoſe which have red hairs, inclining to brown; and as choler is the moſt predominant humour in this animal, ſo he is found to be of a giddy nature, and impatient, when the beaſt he follows makes turns, ſeeing he ſtill runs forwards to find him, which is a great fault; and therefore they are ſeldom made uſe of to hunt any other than the wolf, or ſuch black beaſts as are rarely inclined to turnings: they are too ſwift, open but very little, eſpecially in very hot weather; they are naturally impatient, and therefore hard to be taught, as they are uneaſy under correction.

They are more ſubject to diſeaſes than other dogs, by reaſon of that over fierceneſs of temper, which makes them hunt beyond their ſtrength.

As to the proportions, ſizes, and features of dogs, *M. Liger* ſays, the large, tall, and big hounds, called and known by the name of the deep-mouthed, or *ſouthern-hound*, are heavy and ſlow, and fit for woodlands, and hilly countries; they are of deep mouths, and ſwift ſpenders: they are generally lighter behind than before, with thick ſhort legs, and are generally great of body and head, and are moſt proper for ſuch

as

as delight to follow them on foot, as *ſtop-hunting*, a ſome call it; but by moſt is termed *hunting under the pole*; that is, they are brought to that exactneſs of command, that in the hotteſt ſcent, and fulleſt chace, if one but ſtep before them, or hollow, or but hold up or throw before them the hunting-pole, they will ſtop in an inſtant, and hunt in full cry after you, at your own pace, until you give them encouragement by word of command; which much adds to the length of the ſport, and pleaſure of the hunters, ſo that a courſe oftentimes laſteth five or ſix hours.

Oppoſite to the deep-mouthed or ſouthern hound, are the long and ſlender hounds, called the *fleet*, or *northern-hound*; which are very ſwift, as not being of ſo heavy a body, nor having ſuch large ears: Theſe will exerciſe your horſes, and try their ſtrength; they are proper for open, level, and champaign countries, where they may run in view, and full ſpeed; for they hunt more by the eye than by the noſe, and will run down a hare in an hour, and ſometimes ſooner: but the fox will exerciſe them longer, and better.

Between theſe two extremes, there are a middle ſort of dogs, which partake of both their qualities as to ſtrength and ſwiftneſs, in a reaſonable proportion: they are generally bred by croſſing the ſtrains, and are excellent in ſuch countries as are mixed, *viz.* ſome mountains, ſome incloſures, ſome plains, and ſome woodlands; for they will go through thick and thin, neither need they be helped over hedges, as the huntſmen are often forced to do by others.

A true, right ſhaped, deep-mouthed hound, ſhould have a round, thick head, wide noſtrils, open and riſing upwards, his ears large and thin, hanging lower than his chops, the fleeces of his upper lip ſhould be longer than thoſe of his nether chops, the chine of his back great and thick, ſtrait and long, and rather bending out than inclining in; his thighs well truſſed, his haunches

haunches large, his fillets round and large, his tail or ſtern ſtrong ſet on, waxing taper-wiſe towards the top, his hair under his belly rough and long, his legs large and lean, his feet dry and hard, with ſtrong claws and high knuckles: in the whole, he ought to be of ſo juſt a ſymmetry, that when he ſtands level, you may diſcern which is higheſt, his fore or hinder parts.

For the *northern*, or *fleet-hound*, his head and noſe ought to be ſlender and longer, his back broad, his belly gaunt, his joints long, and his ears thicker and ſhorter; in a word, he is in all parts ſlighter made, and framed after the mould of a greyhound.

By croſſing thoſe breeds, as before obſerved, you may bring your kennel to ſuch a compoſition as you think fit, every man's fancy being to be preferred; and it is a well known ſaying,

So many men, ſo many minds;
So many hounds, ſo many kinds.

Though I ſhall refer the reader to the diſeaſes incident to dogs, under their reſpective heads; yet their being bitten or ſtung by ſome venomous creatures, and others being not eaſily reducible to an article by it ſelf, it ſhall be added here: and when they are ſtung by ſome adder, or other inſect of that nature, you muſt take an handful of the herb croſs-wort, gentian, and as much rue, the ſame quantity of *Spaniſh* pepper, thin broth, ends of broom and mint, of all an equal quantity; when that is done, take ſome white wine, and make a decoction of the whole, letting it boil for an hour in a pot; then ſtrain the whole, into which put an ounce of diſſolved treacle, and let the dog ſwallow it, and obſerve to waſh the bite therewith: if a dog is bitten by a fox, anoint it with oil wherein you have boiled ſome rue and worms.

Or

Of Dog-Madness.

Dog-Madneſs is a diſtemper very common among all ſorts of dogs; eaſy to be prevented, but hard to be cured: there are no leſs than ſeven ſorts of madneſs, amongſt which ſome are eſteemed incurable; but before we proceed to particulars, it will be neceſſary to premiſe how it comes, and what are it's firſt ſymptoms.

The firſt cauſe proceeds from high feeding, want of exerciſe, fulneſs of blood and coſtiveneſs; as for the two firſt, you muſt obſerve when you hunt them, that they ſhould be better fed than when they reſt, and let them neither be too fat nor too lean, but of the two, rather fat than lean, by which means they will not only be preſerved from madneſs, but alſo mange and ſcab; which diſeaſes they will be ſubject to for want of air, water, or exerciſe; but if you have but the knack to keep them thus in an even temper, they may live long and continue ſound; as for water they ſhould be their own carvers: then for exerciſe and diet, it muſt be ordered according to diſcretion, obſerving a medium; and for the latter, give them once a week, eſpecially in the heat of the year, five or ſix ſpoonfuls of ſallad oil, which will cleanſe them: if at other times they have the quantity given them of a hazle-nut of mithridate, it is an excellent thing to prevent diſdiſeaſes, and it is very good to bleed them under the tongue, and behind the ears. But if madneſs has ſeized them before you perceive it, they muſt ſpeedily be removed from the reſt, for fear of an infection, and go to work with the reſt.

The ſymptoms of this diſeaſe are many and eaſily diſcerned; when any dog ſeparates himſelf contrary to his former uſe, becomes melancholy or droops his head, forbears eating, and as he runs ſnatches at every thing; if he often looks upwards, and that his ſtern at his ſetting on be a little erect, and the reſt hanging down;

down; if his eyes be red, his breath ſtrong, his voice hoarſe, and that he drivels and foams at the mouth; you may be aſſured he has this diſtemper.

The ſeven ſorts of madneſs are as follows; of which the two firſt are incurable, *viz.* the *hot burning madneſs*, and *running madneſs*; they are both very dangerous; for all things they bite and draw blood from, will have the ſame diſtemper; they generally ſeize on all they meet with, but chiefly on dogs: their pain is ſo great it ſoon kills them. The five curable madneſſes are;

Sleeping madneſs, ſo called from the dog's great drowſineſs, and almoſt continual ſleeping; and this is cauſed by the little worms that breed in the mouth of the ſtomach, from corrupt humours, vapours, and fumes which aſcend to the head: for cure of which, take ſix ounces of the juice of wormwood, two ounces of the powder of hartſhorn burnt, and two drams of agaric, mix all theſe together in a little white wine, and give it the dog to drink in a drenching horn.

Dumb madneſs lies alſo in the blood, and cauſes the dog not to feed, but to hold his mouth always wide open, frequently putting his feet to his mouth, as if he had a bone in his throat: to cure this, take the juice of black hellebore, the juice of *ſpatula putrida*, and of rue; of each four ounces; ſtrain them well, and put thereto two drams of unprepared ſcammony, and being mixed well together, put it down the dog's throat with a drenching horn, keeping his head up for ſome time, leſt he caſt it out again; then bleed him in the mouth, by cutting two or three veins in his gums.

It is ſaid that about eight drams of the juice of an herb called hartſhorn, or dog's tooth, being given to the dog, cures all ſorts of madneſs, but whether it will or not is left to trial.

Lank madneſs is ſo called, by reaſon of the dog's leanneſs and pining away: for cure give them a purge

as

as before directed, and alſo bleed them: but ſome ſay there is no cure for it.

Rheumatic or *ſlavering madneſs*, occaſions the dog's head to ſwell, his eyes to look yellow, and he will be always ſlavering and drivelling at the mouth; to cure which, take four ounces of the powder of the roots of polipody of the oak, ſix ounces of the juice of fennel roots, with the like quantity of the roots of miſleto, and four ounces of the juice of ivy: boil all theſe together in white wine, and give it to the dog as hot as he can take it, in a drenching horn.

Falling madneſs is ſo termed becauſe it lies in the dog's head, and makes them reel as they go, and to fall down: for cure, take four ounces of the juice of briony, and the ſame quantity of the juice of peony, with four drams of ſtaveſacre pulverized; mix theſe together and give it the dog in a drenching horn; alſo let him blood in the ears, and in the two veins that come down his ſhoulders; and indeed bleeding is neceſſary for all ſorts of madneſs in dogs.

To prevent dogs from being mad, that are bitten by mad dogs, that is done by bathing them; in order to which take a barrel or bucking tub full of water, into which put about a buſhel and an half of ſoot, which muſt be ſtirred well, that it may be diſſolved; then put in the dog that is bittten, and plunge him over head and ears ſeven or eight times therein, and it will prevent his being mad; but he ſhould be alſo blooded.

When dogs happen to be bit as aforeſaid, there is nothing better than their licking the place with their own tongues, if they can reach it, if not, then let it be waſhed with butter and vinegar made lukewarm, and let it afterwards be anointed with *Venice* turpentine: it is alſo good to piſs often upon the wound; but above all, take the juice of the ſtalks of ſtrong tobacco boiled in water, and bathe the place therewith, alſo waſh him in ſea water, or water artificially made ſalt:

give

give him likewiſe a little mithridate inwardly in two or three ſpoonfuls of ſack, and ſo keep him apart, and if you find him after ſome time ſtill to droop, the beſt way is to hang him.

It may not be amiſs to add what a late author adviſes every one who keeps a dog, which is to have him wormed, and is a thing of little trouble and charge, and what he believes would prevent their being mad; and if they are, he is of opinion that it prevents their biting any other creature; for he aſſerts he had three dogs bit by mad dogs, at three ſeveral times, that were wormed, and though they died mad, yet they did not bite, nor do any miſchief to any thing he had: and having a mind to make a full experiment of it, he ſhut one of them up in a kennel, and put to him a dog he did not value: that the mad dog would often run at the other dog to bite him; but he found his tongue ſo much ſwelled in his mouth, that he could not make his teeth meet; that that dog, though he kept him with the mad dog till he died, yet did not ail any thing, though he kept him two years afterwards, and gave him no remedies to prevent any harm, which might come from the biting of the mad dog.

But as there are ſeveral ſorts of madneſs in dogs, he was not certain whether the effects were the ſame in all; but his dogs ſeemed to die of the black madneſs, which is reckoned the moſt dangerous, and therefore he could not tell how far the following receipt might be effectual in all ſorts of madneſs, though it had not failed in curing all the dogs that he gave it to which were bitten, and all thoſe he gave it not to, died.

The remedy is this, take white hellebore and grate it with a grater to powder, which muſt be mixed with butter, and given to the dog: the doſe muſt be proportioned to the ſize of the dog, to a very ſmall lap-dog you may give three grains, to a large maſtiff ſixteen grains, and ſo in proportion to other ſizes. He adds, that

that the beſt way is, to give him a ſmall quantity at firſt, that it may be increaſed as it is found to work, or not to work; but that as it is a ſtrong vomit, and will make the dogs ſick for a little time, ſo they muſt be kept warm that day it is given them, and the next night, and they muſt not have cold water; but when it has done working, towards the afternoon give them ſome warm broth, and the next morning give them the ſame before you let them out of the houſe or kennel.

The ſame author ſays this is an extraordinary remedy for the mange; that he never knew three doſes fail of curing any dog that had it, except he had a ſurfeit with it; which if he had, let him blood alſo, and anoint him two or three times over with gunpowder and ſoap, beat up together, and it will cure him.

That he had it of a gentleman, who had cured ſeveral creatures that had been bit by mad dogs, with only giving them the middle yellow bark of buckthorn, which muſt be boiled in ale for a horſe or cow, and in milk for a dog; and that being bit with one himſelf, he adventured to take nothing elſe; but that it muſt be boiled till it is as bitter as you can well take it.

The choice of a DOG *and* BITCH *for breeding good* WHELPS.

The bitch ought to be one of a good kind, being ſtrong and well proportioned in all parts, having her ribs and flanks great and large.

Let the dog that lines her be of a good fair breed; and let him be young, if you intend to have light and hot hounds; for if the dog be old, the whelps will participitate of his dull and heavy nature.

If your bitch do not grow proud of her own accord, ſo ſoon as you would have her, you may make her ſo by giving her the following broth:

Boil two heads of garlic, half a caſtor's ſtone, the juice of creſſes, and about twelve *Spaniſh* flies, in a pipkin

kin that holds a pint, together with ſome mutton, and make broth of it; and give of this to the bitch two or three times, and ſhe will not fail to grow proud, and the ſame pottage given to the dog will make him inclinable to copulation.

After your bitch has been lined and is with puppy, you muſt not let her hunt, for that will be the way to make her caſt her whelps; but let her walk up and down unconfined in the houſe and court; never locking her up in her kennel; for ſhe is then impatient of food, and therefore you muſt make her ſome hot broth once a day.

If you would ſpay your bitch, it muſt be done before ſhe has ever had a litter of whelps; and in ſpaying her take not away all the roots and ſtrings of the veins; for if you do it will much prejudice her reins, and hinder her ſwiftneſs ever after: but by leaving ſome behind, it will make her much the ſtronger and more hardy.

But by no means do not ſpay her while ſhe is proud, for that will endanger her life: but you may do it fifteen days after; but the beſt time of all is when the whelps are ſhaped within her

Of the WATER *Spaniel; how to train, and order him for the game in fowling.*

The water dog is of ſuch general uſe, and ſo common amongſt us, that there needs no great deſcription of him; but there are great differences amongſt them, as well in proportion as otherwiſe.

As to colour, the curious will make a difference, as the black to be the beſt and hardieſt; the ſpotted or pied, quickeſt of ſcent, and the liver-hewed quickeſt in ſwimming; but, in truth, colour is nothing material, for without doubt there are good and bad of all colours, and that by experience is found: but his breeding, training up, and coming of a good kind, are the chief things; yet it muſt be confeſſed, that as to handſome-

neſs,

neſs, the colour is to be regarded, ſo is the proportion as to the ſhape; and then his head ſhould be round, with curled hair, his ears broad and hanging, his eyes full and lively, his noſe ſhort, his lips like unto an hound's, his neck thick and ſhort, his ſhoulders broad, his legs ſtraight, his chine ſquare, his ribs with a compaſs, his buttocks round, his thighs brawny, his belly gaunt, his paſterns ſtrong and dew-clawed, and his fore-feet long and round, with his hair in general long and curled, not looſe and ſhagged: for the firſt ſheweth hardineſs and ſtrength to endure the water, and the other much tenderneſs and weakneſs.

Now for the training and bringing him up, you can't begin too early, to teach him obedience, when he can but lap, for that is the principal thing to be learned; for being made to obey, he is then ready to do your commands, therefore ſo ſoon as he can lap, teach him to couch and lie cloſe, not daring to ſtir from that poſture without your commands; and the better to effect this, always cheriſh him when he does your will, and correct him when he diſobeys; and be ſure to obſerve, that in the firſt teaching him you never let him eat any thing, but when he does ſomething to deſerve it, that he may thereby know, that food is a thing that cometh not by chance, or by a liberal hand, but only for a reward for well-doing; and this will make him not only willing to learn, but apt to remember what he is taught without blows, and to that end, have no more teachers than one, for variety breed confuſion, as teaching divers ways, ſo that he can learn no way well.

Another thing is, you muſt be very conſtant to the words of direction by which you teach him, chuſing ſuch as are moſt pertinent to that purpoſe, and thoſe words that you firſt uſe, do not alter, for dogs take notice of the ſound, not of the *Engliſh*, ſo that the leaſt alteration puts them to a ſtand: For example, if you teach

teach him to couch at the word *down*, this will be a known command unto him; and I am of opinion, that to uſe more words than what is neceſſary, for one and the ſame thing, is to overload his memory, and cauſe forgetfulneſs in him.

And this method ſhould be obſerved, as to the ſetting-dog.

You muſt teach him alſo to know the word of correction, and reprehenſion, for no leſſon can be taught without a fault; and no fault ſhould eſcape without reprehenſion, or at the leaſt of chiding, and in this be as conſtant to a word; as, *Go too ſirrah*, *raſcal*, or the like; which at firſt ſhould be uſed with a laſh or jerk, to make him know, that it is a word of wrath or anger; neither muſt ſuch words proceed from you lovingly, or gently, but with paſſion and roughneſs of voice, together with fierceneſs of looks, that the whelp may tremble when he hears you ſpeak thus. You muſt have certain words of cheriſhing when he hath done well, that he may be thereby encouraged, as *That's a good boy*, *well done*, or the like, uſing therewith chearfulneſs of ſpeech, without actions of favour, as ſpitting in his mouth, clapping him on the back, and the like; you muſt alſo uſe ſome words of advice, that when he is at his ſport, he may the better perform the ſame, and they may ſerve to ſpur or put him forward with more chearfulneſs of ſpirit, as *Take heed*, *hem*, or the like.

When your whelp is brought to underſtand theſe ſeveral words, *viz.* of inſtruction, correction, cheriſhing, and advice, and that he will couch and lie down at your feet, how, when, and as long as you pleaſe, and that with a word, or look only; then teach him to lead you in a line or collar, and to follow at your heels, without coming too cloſe or hanging back; the meaning of this is, to teach him to be more familiar and obedient unto you.

Having brought him to perfect obedience, to follow you

you in a line, the next thing muſt be, to make him follow you in like manner looſe, without a line, and always to be at your heels, and to lie down by you without your leave to the contrary: this is as neceſſary a leſſon as can be taught him, for he muſt be ſo but upon ſpecial occaſion, as to raiſe up fowl from their haunts, and find out, and bring what you have ſhot or killed, unto you.

The next leſſon to learn him is, to fetch and carry any thing that you ſhall command him; and this you may begin to teach him by the way of ſport, as by taking your glove, and ſhaking over his head, making him to catch at it, and to play with it; and ſometimes let him hold it in his mouth, and ſtrive to pull it from you; then caſt it a little way from you, and let him muzzle it on the ground; then take it from him gently, giving him cheriſhing, as, That's a good boy, well done, or the like.

After you have ſpent ſome time in this, and that you find him to take it from the ground, and to hold it in his mouth, as it were, from you; then begin to caſt it further and further, giving him your command, ſaying, Fetch, or bring it, ſirrah; and if he brings it, then cheriſh and reward him with meat, or a cruſt of bread, and let him have no food, but what he deſerves by doing his leſſon, and by your continual practice he will fetch your glove, or any thing elſe you throw out for him.

If at any time he offers to run away with your glove, or to toſs it up and down wantonly, not bringing it to your orderly, then firſt give him your word of inſtruction.

And if that will not do, your word of correction; and if neither avail, then proceed to blows, and give him nothing to eat as a reward, until he doth as you command.

When by this means you have made him perfect,

and

and that he will fetch a glove readily where-ever you throw it, bringing it to you, altho' in company, and all call him to come to them; you muſt then make much of him, and reward him very well: and having trained him to fetch your glove, then proceed to teach him to fetch whatſoever you throw from you, as ſtaves, ſticks, ſtones, money, or any thing that is portable.

As alſo teach him to carry live or dead foul, and with a tender mouth, that when you have occaſion to uſe him for the ſport, he may bring them to you without tearing, or ſo much as bruiſing a feather.

As you walk with him in the fields, drop ſomething behind you unknown to him; and being gone a little way, ſend him back to ſeek it, by ſaying, Back, ſirrah, I have loſt; and if at firſt he ſtand amazed, urge him ſtill, and ceaſe not by pointing to him the way you would have him go, until by ſeeking out he finds that which you ſo dropped; which make him take up, by ſaying, That's it, and to bring it after you; then drop it again, going twice as far as formerly, cauſing him to go back to ſeek it, not leaving him till you have made him find it, and bring it to you, for which cheriſh and reward him; and where he fails there, chaſtiſe or chide him, ſometimes with angry words, other times with blows, and ſometimes keep him faſting, according to his offence; and thus do until he will hunt the way back which you went, were it above a mile.

But if your dog happen to bring you a wrong thing, you muſt receive it from him, and cheriſh him; but ſend him back preſently again, ſaying, Away again, or, I have loſt more, and be not ſatisfied until he hath brought you the right thing; and if he return without any thing, then be ſure both to chide and beat him for his ſloth and negligence.

When he will thus fetch, carry, and find out things thus loſt, then train him to hunting, beginning firſt with

with tame fowl, which by your help (when they dive, or otherwiſe) you may with little labour make him take, which will hearten and encourage him to the ſport.

After this, make him uſe all his cunning without your aſſiſtance, whether he gets or loſes the game, and according to his deſert, reward or correct him: by this practice he will become maſter of his game; and be ſure always that he bring his game (when taking) to the ſhore unto you without hurting it.

Your next buſineſs ſhall be, to train him unto your fowling-piece, cauſing him to follow, as it were, ſtep by ſtep behind you, and under the covert of your ſhadow until you have ſhot, or elſe couch, or lie cloſe, where you appoint him, by ſaying, *lie cloſe*, until you have ſhot; and then upon the leaſt notice, or beckoning ſpeedily to come and do what you command.

Some dogs are ſo expert, as to have their eye upon the game, and upon a guns going off immediately, run to fetch it; but 'tis adjudged not ſo good, for the place ſhould not be a warning to him, but your command; and if you give him his liberty at your ſhooting, when you come amongſt your nets or lime-twigs, as ſoon as he ſeeth the fowl entangled and flutter their wings, he will preſently ruſh in amongſt them, and will occaſion the ſpoiling your lime rods, and the tearing or entangling your nets.

The ſpaniel is of great uſe in the moulting-time, that is, when the wild-fowl caſt their feathers, and can't fly, but lie lurking about in ſecret places; which ſeaſon is between ſummer and autumn: at which time take your dog into ſuch places where they reſort, cauſing him to hunt about; and when he finds them, they are eaſily taken, becauſe they can't fly.

In fenny countries, where fowl do much reſort, great quantities may be ſo taken, driving them into places

where

where you muſt have nets ready fixed, as in narrow creeks, or the like.

Theſe fowl, if taken and kept tame, and fed with beaſts livers, whey, curds, barley, paſte, ſcalded bran, and the like, are excellent food, far ſurpaſſing thoſe abſolutely wild, both for plumpneſs, fatneſs of body, and alſo for ſweetneſs of taſte.

Of LURCHERS.

Lurchers is a kind of hunting-dog much like a mongrel greyhound with prickt ears, a ſhagged coat, and generally of a yellowiſh white colour: they are very ſwift runners, ſo that if they get between the burroughs and the conies, they ſeldom miſs; and this is their common practice in hunting; yet they uſe other ſubtilties, as the *tumbler* does, ſome of them bringing in their game, and thoſe are the beſt. It is alſo obſervable that a *lurcher* will run down a hare at ſtretch.

The TUMBLER.

The name of this dog is derived from the *French Tumbler*, which ſignifies to tumble; and is called *vertagus* in *Latin* from *vertere*, to turn or tumble; and ſo they do; for in hunting they turn and tumble, winding their bodies about circularly, and then fiercely and violently venturing on the beaſt, do ſuddenly gripe it at the very entrance or mouth of their holes and receptacles, before they can make any recovery of ſelf ſecurity.

This dog uſeth alſo another craft and ſubtilty; namely, when he runneth into a warren, or fetcheth a courſe about a coney-borough, he hunts not after them, nor does any way affright them; he ſhews no ſpite againſt them, but diſſembling friendſhip, and pretending favour, paſſes by with quietneſs and ſilence, marking their holes diligently, wherein he is ſeldom deceived.

When he comes to a place where there is a certainty of conies, he couches down close with his belly to the ground, provided always that by his skill and policy, that the wind be against him in that enterprize, and that the conies discover him not where he lurketh, by which means he gets the scent of the conies, which is carried to him by the wind and air, either going to their holes, or coming out; either passing this way, or running that way, and by his circumspection so orders his matters, that the silly coney is debarred quite from his hole (which is the haven of his hope, and harbour of his safety) and fraudently circumvented and taken, before he can reach his hole.

Thus having caught his prey, he immediately carries it to his master, who waits for the return of his dog in some convenient lurking place.

These dogs are somewhat lesser than the hounds, being lanker, leaner, and somewhat prick-eared.

By the form and fashion of their bodies, they might be called mungrel grey-hounds, if they were somewhat bigger.

But though they do not equal the grey-hound in size, yet they will in the compass of one day, kill as many conies as shall be a sufficient load for a horse; for craft and subtilty are the instruments whereby they make this spoil.

A Setting-Dog.

A dog trained up to the setting of partridges, *&c.* from a whelp, till he comes to perfection; you must pitch upon one that has a perfect and good scent, and is naturally addicted to the hunting of fowl, and this dog may be either a *land-spaniel*, *water-spaniel*, or a *mungrel* between both, or indeed the *shallow-flew'd*, *hound*, *tumbler*, *lurcher*, or *small bastard-mastiff*, but none is better than the *land-spaniel*; he should be of a good nimble size, rather small than thick, and of a cou-

courageous mettle, which, tho' not to be diſcerned being very young, yet you may very well know it from a right breed, which have been known to be ſtrong, luſty, and nimble rangers, of active feet, wanton tails, and buſy noſtrils.

Having made choice of a dog, begin to inſtruct him at four months old, or ſix at the fartheſt, and the firſt thing you ſhould do, is to make him loving to, and familiar with you; the better to effect this, let him receive his food, as much as can be, from no other hand but your own, and correct him rather with words than blows. When he is ſo far trained as that he will follow none but yourſelf, and can diſtinguiſh your frown from your ſmile, and ſmooth words from rough, teach him to couch and lie cloſe to the ground, firſt by laying him often on the ground, and crying *lie cloſe*, and then rewarding or chaſtizing him, according as he deſerves; in the next place teach him to come creeping to you, and if he offer to raiſe his body or head, you muſt not only thruſt the riſing part down, but threaten him with an angry voice, which if he ſeem to ſlight, give him a ſmall jerk or two with a whip-cord, laſh, and often renew his leſſons, till he become very perfect in them.

Then teach him to lead in a ſtring or line, and to follow you cloſe at your heels, without trouble or ſtraining his collar; after he has learned theſe things, take him into the field, and give him his liberty to range, but ſtill in obedience to your command, and if he commits a fault, give him due correction.

As ſoon as you ſee him come upon the haunt of any partridge (which may be known by his greater eagerneſs in hunting, as alſo by a kind of whimpering and whining voice, being very deſirous to open, but not daring) you ought then to ſpeak to him, bidding him to take heed, or the like; but yet, if he either ruſh in, or ſpring the partridge, or open, and ſo the partridge

eſcapes, then he ought to be ſeverely corrected, and caſt him off again, and let him hunt in ſome place where you know a covey lies, and ſee whether he has mended his fault; and if you catch any with your nets, give him the heads, necks, and pinnions, for his encouragement.

Of Greyhounds.

A greyhound is a hunting-dog that deſerves the firſt place, by reaſon of his ſwiftneſs, ſtrength, and ſagacity in purſuing his game; for ſuch is the nature of this dog, that he is well ſcented to find out, ſpeedy and quick of foot to follow, fierce and ſtrong to overcome, yet ſilent, coming upon his prey unawares.

Some derive the name of this hound from *Gre*, which is an abbreviation of *Degree*, becauſe among all dogs they are the moſt principal, having the chiefeſt place, and being ſurely and abſolutely the beſt of the gentle kind of hounds.

The beſt ſort of them has a long body, ſtrong and pretty large; a neat ſharp head, ſparkling eyes, a long mouth, and ſharp teeth; little ears, with thin griſtles, a ſtrait broad and ſtrong breaſt, his fore legs ſtrait and ſhort, his hind legs long and ſtrait, broad ſhoulders, round ribs, fleſhy buttocks, but not fat, a long tail, and ſtrong and full of ſinews.

Of this kind, thoſe are always fitteſt to be choſen among the whelps that weigh lighteſt, for they will be ſooner at the game, and ſo hang upon it, hindering it's ſwiftneſs, till the heavier and ſtrong hounds come to offer their aſſiſtance; and therefore, beſides what has been already ſaid;

'Tis requiſite for a greyhound to have large ſides, and a broad midriff, ſo that he may take his breath in and out more eaſily: his belly ſhould alſo be ſmall, (which otherwiſe would obſtruct the ſwiftneſs of his courſe) his legs long, and his hairs thin and ſoft: the

Huntſ-

Huntſman is to lead theſe hounds on his left hand, if he be on foot, and on the right if on horſeback.

The beſt time to try to train and lead them to their game, is at twelve months old, tho' ſome begin ſooner with them, with the males at ten months, and the females at eight months old, which laſt are generally more ſwift than the dogs: they muſt alſo be kept in a ſlip while abroad, till they can ſee their courſe; neither ſhould you run a young dog till the game has been on foot a conſiderable time, leſt being over greedy of the prey he ſtrain his limbs too much.

The *greyhounds* are moſt in requeſt with the *Germans*, who give them the name of *windſpil*, alluding to their ſwiftneſs; but the *French* make moſt account of thoſe that are bred in the mountains of *Dalmatia*, or in any other mountains, eſpecially of *Tuſcy*, for ſuch have hard feet, long ears, and a briſtly or buſhy tail.

As to the breeding of *greyhounds*, in this you muſt have reſpect to the country, which ſhould be champain, plain, or high downs.

The beſt vallies are thoſe of *Belvoir*, *White-horſe*, *Beel-holm*, or any other where there are no covert; ſo that a hare may ſtand forth and endure a courſe of two or three miles. As for high downs and heaths, the beſt are about *Marlborough*, *Saliſbury*, *Cirenceſter*, and *Lincoln*.

Tho' theſe places are very commodious for the breeding and training up of *greyhounds*, yet ſome are of opinion that the middle, or moſt part of arable grounds, are the beſt; tho' others who dwell on downs or plains, to keep up the reputation of their own dogs, affirm, that they are more nimble and cunning than vale dogs are.

It is a received opinion, that a *greyhound* bitch will in common beat a *greyhound* dog, by reaſon that ſhe excels him in nimbleneſs; but if it be conſidered that the dog is longer and ſtronger, that opinion will ſeem to be a vulgar error.

Here you may take notice as to the breeding of *greyhounds*, that the beſt dog upon an indifferent bitch, will not get ſo good a whelp, as an indifferent dog upon a good bitch.

And obſerve this in general as to breeding; let the dogs and bitches, as near as you can, be of an equal age, not exceeding four years old; however, to breed with a young dog and an old bitch, may be the means of producing excellent whelps, the goodneſs of which you may know by their ſhapes, in the following manner.

In the breeding of *greyhounds*, in the firſt place,

The dieting of GREYHOUNDS, conſiſts in theſe four things, food, exereiſe, airing, and kennelling.

The food of a *greyhound* is two-fold, general; that is, the maintaining of a dog in good bodily condition; and particularly, when a dog is dieted for a wager, or it may be for ſome diſtemper he is troubled with.

The general food of a *greyhound* ought to be chippings, cruſts of bread, ſoft bones and griſtles, the chippings ſcalded in beef, mutton, veal or veniſon broth; and when it is indifferent cool, then make your bread only float in good milk, and give it your *greyhounds* morning and evening, and this will keep them in good ſtate of body.

But if your dog be poor, ſickly and weak, then take ſheeps heads, wool and all, clean waſhed, and having broken them to pieces, put them into a pot; and when it boils, ſcum the pot, and put good ſtore of oatmeal into it, and ſuch herbs as pottage is uſually made with; boil theſe till the fleſh is very tender and feed your dog with this morning and evening, and it will recover him.

If you deſign your *greyhound* for a wager, then give him his diet bread as follows.

Take half a peck of good wheat, and half a peck of the fineſt, drieſt oatmeal, grind them together, boult the

the meal, and having ſcattered in it an indifferent quantity of liquorice and anniſeeds, well beaten together, knead it up with the whites of eggs, and bake it in ſmall loaves, indifferent hard, then ſoak it in beef or other broths; and having walked him and aired him half an hour after ſun-riſe in the morning, and half an hour before ſun-ſetting, give him ſome of it to eat.

The exerciſe of a GREYHOUND.

He ought to be courſed three times a week, rewarding him with blood, which will animate and encourage him to proſecute his game; but forget not to give the *hare* all the juſt and lawful advantage, ſo that ſhe may ſtand long before the *greyhound*, that thereby he may ſhew his utmoſt ſtrength and ſkill before he reap the benefit of his labour.

If he kill, do not ſuffer him to break the *hare*, but take her from him, and clean his chaps from the wool of the *hare*; give him the liver and lights, and then take him up in your leaſh, lead him home, and waſh his feet with ſome butter and beer, and put him into the kennel, and half an hour afterwards feed him.

Upon the courſing days, give your hound a toaſt and butter or oil, in the morning, and nothing elſe, and then kennel him till he go to the courſe.

The kennelling *greyhounds* after this manner breeds in them luſt, ſpirit, and nimbleneſs: it alſo prevents ſeveral dangerous caſualties, and keeps the pores cloſe, ſo as not to ſpend till time of neceſſity; therefore ſuffer not your hound to go out of the kennel, but at the hours of feeding, walking, courſing, or other neceſſary buſineſs.

Of TERRIERS.

A *Terrier* is a kind of hound, uſed only, or chiefly for hunting the fox or badger; ſo called, becauſe he creeps into the ground, as the ferrets do into the coney-burrows,

burrows, and there nips and bites the fox and badger, either tearing them in pieces with his teeth, or elſe halling and pulling them by force out of their lurking holes; or at leaſt driving them out of their hollow harbours, to be taken hy a net, or otherwiſe.

The huntſmen have commonly a couple of terriers, to the end they may put in a freſh one, as occaſion ſerves, to relieve the other.

The time proper for entering theſe terriers is, when they are near a year old; for if it be done within that time, they will hardly after be brought to take the earth, and this entering and fleſhing of them may be perform'd ſeveral ways.

When foxes and badgers have young cubs, take your old terriers, and enter them in the ground; and when they begin to bay, you muſt hold every one of your terriers at a particular hole or mouth of the earth, that they may liſten, and hear the old ones bay.

After you have taken the old fox or badger, ſo that nothing remain within but the young cubs, couple all your old terriers, and put the young ones in their ſtead; encouraging them by crying, *to him, to him.*

And if they take any young cub within the ground, let them alone to do what they will with him; and do not forget to give the old terriers their reward; which is blood and livers fried with cheeſe, and ſome of their greaſe, ſhewing the heads and ſkins to encourage them.

Another way is, to take an old fox or badger, and to cut his nether jaw away, leaving the upper to ſhew the fury of the beaſt, tho' he can do no harm with it, or elſe break out all his teeth; then dig an earth in ſome convenient place in the ground, making it wide enough, that the terriers may the better turn therein, and have room enough for two to enter.

Cover the hole with boards and turf, firſt putting the fox or badger in, and then your terriers, both young and old; which when they have bayed ſufficiently, begin

begin to dig with ſpades, and mattocks, to encourage them, againſt ſuch time as you are to dig over them; afterwards, take out the fox and badger, with the chumps or pincers, killing it before them; or let a greyhound kill it in their ſight.

Of ANGLING.

Of FISHING-RODS *and* TACKLE.

AS for your tops, haſle or yew ſwitches gathered about the middle of *December*, when moſt free from ſap, are accounted very good, though the two following, or preceding months, may reaſonably ſerve, run them over a gentle heat, to make them tough; let the ſtock and tops be taper, ſmooth and ſtrait, the pieces of each rod ſuitable in an exact ſymmetry, free from knots, or elſe they will be deficient in caſting, and never ſtrike well, nor be truly pliable, but at a knot be apt to break, and ſpoil your ſport. To keep them in good order, bind them cloſe to a ſtraight pole, and ſo let them continue long, that they may not warp, faſten a loop of ſilk or horſe hair at the end of it with ſhoemakers thread, that the line may have play on it, and tho' many uſe ſilk lines, yet I prefer the horſe hair as the beſt; and in twiſting or braiding, obſerve an exact evenneſs, for one hair being ſhorter than the reſt in a link, the whole ſtreſs will lye on that, and in breaking, renders the reſt much the weaker, and often a good fiſh is loſt for want of this obſervance; make your knots ſure, that they ſlip not; as for the colour of the hair, it being free from nits or goutineſs, which ſome call botcheſs, the pale, wateriſh colour is the beſt to deceive in a clear ſtream, but in wheyiſh or muddy water, you may chuſe indifferently a line; for the ground angle need not be ſo ſtrong as that you intend for your rod at the artificial fly, abating in the latter a hair from top

to bottom, in every link from one or two, to ſix or eight, or more.

As for the hook, it muſt be long in the ſhank, and of a compaſs ſomewhat inclining to roundneſs for if the ſhank be ſtrait, the point will ſtand out-ward; faſten the hair on the inſide of the ſhank, to preſerve it from fretting whether you angle at top or bottom; proportion your hook for ſtrength and compaſs, to the number of hairs you angle with next it, neither uſe great hooks to ſmall baits, nor great baits with little hooks; *barbel chub* muſt have large hooks; *carps*, *eels*, *tench*, *pearch*, *breams*, thoſe of a much leſſer ſize; and experience teaches. *Trouts* in clear water. *Graylings*, *ſmelts*, *roaches*, *ſalmon-ſmelts*, *dace*, *ruff*, and *gudgeons* are ſooneſt taken with ſmall hooks, though many uſe great ones for the *trout*, eſpecially in muddy water, yet the *ſalmon* muſt be angled for with a hook according to his ſtrength; hooks for dubflies ſhould be generally ſmall, and ſo for cod baits, but larger for worms, yet ſuch as ſome uſe for the latter, do not generally take in clear water: when you whip your hook, which is ſtiled arming, do it with ſilk lightly rubb'd with ſhoemakers wax, twiſting it round on the lower part of the line, almoſt to the bent of the hook on the inſide, having firſt ſmoothed the ſhank of the hook with a whetſtone; and for worms let it be red coloured ſilk, but for cod-bait, paſts, *&c.* white.

Floats ſhould be of cork for river-fiſhing, but for ponds, meers, and other ſtanding water, quill and pens will do very well, and in very ſlow rivers, eſpecially when you are to angle near the top with tender baits or paſtes: as for your cork, let it be the fineſt, free from holes or flaws, bore it through with a ſmall hot iron, thruſt in a quill fizable, ſhap'd with a knife to the likeneſs of a pyramid, egg, or pear, a proportionable bigneſs, and with a pumice-ſtone finely ſmooth it; run your line through the quill, and wedge it in with the upper-

uppermoſt hard part of the quill, the ſmaller end of the cork being towards the hook, and the bigger towards the rod; let the cork be ſo poiſed with lead on the line, that the quill ſtanding directly upright, the leaſt bite or nibble may ſink the cork.

To lead your line, do it with a ſhot cloven, and then cloſed exactly on it; but not above two of theſe on any line, and that an inch and a half, or two inches diſtant from each other, and the lowermoſt plumb, ſeven or eight inches from the hook; but for a running line, either in clear or muddy water, nine or ten inches, and if you find a ſandy bottom in a river, it being full of wood, with few ſtones, ſhape your lead a diamond-faſhion, or to that of a barly-corn or oval, bring the ends very cloſe and ſmooth to the line, yet make it black, for the brightneſs will ſcare the fiſh.

It is very neceſſary to have a landing net and hook, or you may loſe many large fiſh, by breaking line or hold, before you can land him. The net you may faſten to the end of a long manageable pole: as for the hook it muſt be a large one with a ſerue, to ſerue into a ſocket at the end of a pole, and when your fiſh is entangled, clap it into the mouth of it, and draw it to land; but this latter is chiefly for *barbel*, *ſalmon*, and other ſtrong fiſh.

As for your pannier, let it be of light oſier twigs, neatly woven and worked up, and to be the more compleatly prepared on all occaſions, have in a readineſs divers ſorts of hooks, lines, links ready twiſted, hair, and ſilk of ſeveral colours, ſmall ſtrong thread, lead plummets, ſhoemakers wax, and floats of divers ſizes, line caſes, whet-ſtone, penknife, worm-bags, boxes, baits, ſciſſars. And thus having pretty well accoutred my angler with tackle, it will be next neceſſary to know what baits he muſt uſe, for on that mainly depends ſucceſs or fruſtration.

Baits

Baits bred on trees, herbs, plants, worms; their ſeaſon, and what fiſh take them; when and how, &c.

Baits for the ſundry kinds of fiſh are numerous, and many of them muſt be conſidered in their proper ſeaſon, or they are of no value; as for earth-worms, they are accounted a general bait, they and gentles are always in ſeaſon, earth-bobs only from *Martinmas* till the latter end of *April*, cow-turd-bobs from thence till *Michaelmas*, oakworms bred of trees, plants and herbs, palmers, or wool-beds, flies, caterpillars, cod-baits, *&c.* all the ſummer. Tho' here it is requiſite to note, that when one ſort of baits come in ſeaſon, the other are not entirely uſeleſs. If you are to angle in clear water at the ground, it will be neceſſary to have with you cod-baits, worms, gentles and bobs, to try which will beſt take, but in muddy water for *trouts*, with the running line; you are requir'd for better ſport, to have tagtails, gilt tails, brandlings, meadow-worms, ſome ſcour'd in moſs and water, others directed with a riddle, and ſome again with heavy earth; for almoſt at the ſame time they will take them, ſome one way done, and ſome another, as experience has often demonſtrated.

But to come nearer, and ſhew you what your baits are, and how ſhap'd, and to be choſen.

1. The gardenworm, lob-worm, or treachet and dew-worm, are one and the ſame, though in divers places their names thus alter, and this worm one of the greateſt ſize is an excellent bait for *chevin*, *ſalmon*, *barbel*, or *eel*, tho' the ſmaller of the ſame kind are not much affected with them: that with a broad tail, a red head, and a ſtreak down the back is the beſt, they are found in the latter end of the ſummer, in the evening, in gardens, church yards, and may be driven out of the earth with the juice of walnut-tree leaves and water, pour'd on their holes.

2. Marſh

2. Marſh or meadow-worms are found in marſhy ground, or in banks of rivers in fertil mould, being ſomewhat blueiſh, and being well ſcour'd, it will be tough and lively, and is a very good bait eſpecially in *March*, *April*, *and September*, for *pearch*, *flounder*, *beam*, *ſmelt*, *gudgeon*, *ſalmon*, *trout*, *grayling*; tho' many, and not without ſucceſs, uſe from *Candlenas* to *Michaelmas*, and in moſs and water it may be kept fifteen days before uſe.

3. Brandlings, red-worms, and gilt-tails, are found in old dunghills, rotten earth, cow's dung, hog's dung, or tanner's bark, when it is us'd and caſt by. The brandling and gilt tail are eſpecially good for taking *pearch*, *tench*, *bream*, *ſalmon*, *gudgeon*, *ſmelt*; they are taken by *trout* and *grayling* in muddy or clear water, and the red-worms, well ſcour'd, are taken by *tench*, *pearch*, and *bream*, and beſt in muddy water.

4. The worm call'd tag-tail, is of a fleſh-colour, having at his tail a yellow tag, near half an inch long, found in meadows, after a ſhower of rain, or in chalky ground, in *March* and *April*, if the weather be temperate; this is held an extraordinary good bait for a *trout* in cloudy weather, and a little ſcouring will ſerve it.

5. The palmer-fly, palmer-worm, wool-bed and cankers, are counted one and the ſame, being bred on herbs, trees, and plants, not being properly a caterpillar, yet the ſhape of one, being in the outward part rough and woolly, being excellent baits for the *chub*, *grayling*, *trout*, *dace*, or *roach*. The palmer-fly and may-fly are held the foundation of fly-angling, and have uſually good ſucceſs.

6. The oak-worm, caterpillar, cabbage-worm, crab-tree-worm, or jack, colwort-worm, or grub, may be long kept with the leaves of thoſe trees or plants, that breed them in boxes, with holes for air, or in withy bark, they take *chub*, *roach*, *dace*, and *trout*, the oak-worm being preferable to any who breed on trees or

plants

plants, being the beſt taken on the top of the water, tho' you may go as deep as you will with them; to get theſe, ſearch the colewort or cabbage leaves, beat the oak, or crab-tree, or haw-thorn; ſome of them are hard and tough, others ſmooth and ſoft, ſome horned tailed, others have them on their heads, ſome ſmooth, others hairy.

7. Bobs, of theſe there are two ſorts, they are found in ſandy or mellow ground, eſpecially after plowing: the one is juſtly called the earth bob, white grub or white bait, being much bigger than a gentle, having a red head, the body ſoft, and full of white guts, the other is leſſer, and ſomewhat blueiſh, found many times in digging on heaths; they are excellent baits from *Mid-april*, to the firſt of *November* to take *tench*, *bream*, *trout*, *chub*, *roach*, *ſmelts*, *ſalmon*, *dace*, and *carp*; they muſt be kept in an earthen veſſel, with the earth you find them in, covered very cloſe to keep out the cold and wind; ſome boil them about two minutes in milk before they uſe them, which makes them tougher and whiter, others dip them in honey or gum-ivy for *carp*, *bream*, and both ways prove ſucceſsful.

8. Gentles or maggots, may be kept with fleſh, and ſcoured well with wheat-bran; they are eaſy to be had, or bred by putrifaction. Theſe are ſometimes added to a worm on the hook, ſometimes to a dub-fly, and ſo take *ſalmon-ſmelts*, but oftner uſed by themſelves two or three on a hook; the day before you angle, put them into a box with gum-ivy, and it will prove ſucceſsfull to your ſport; they are good baits for *tench*, *barbel*, *bream*, *bleck*, *gudgeon*, *trout*, *dace*, *chub*, *carp*.

9. Flag-worms, or dock-worms are the ſame, found among flags, in old pits or ponds, *viz.* The ſmall fibres of the flag-roots, by opening little huſks, it is pale, yellow, or white, longer and ſlenderer than a gentle, and theſe may be kept in bran, and are good baits for *bream*, *tench*, *roach*, *carp*, *dace*, *bleak* and *pearch*: when you

you fiſh with it for the *grayling* uſe the ſmalleſt line, and the float, and fiſh nine or ten inches from the ground.

10. The bark-worm or aſh-grub, are all one, being very full and white, bent round from the tail to the head, the head being red, and the parts very tender, reſembling a young dorr or humble-bee, and may be uſed all the year, but particularly from *Michaelmas* to the middle of *May* or *June*, and except the fly and cod-bait, is the beſt for *grayling*, *dace*, *roach* and *chub*; it is found beſt under the bark of an oak, aſh, elder, or beach; eſpecially when fell'd and they have lain about a year, or in the hollow of theſe trees when ſtanding, where doated to rotten; it is a very tender bait, and beſt on a briſtled hook, by running the hook in at the head and up the belly, till it ſtays on the briſtle, and no part of the hook's point appears out of it; they are kept well in wheat bran, and take the *grayling* with the ſmalleſt line; angle with the float, keeping the bait ſeven or eight inches from the bottom; but if you fiſh with it for *roach*, *chub*, or *dace*, uſe in different tackle.

11. There is a bob found under a cowturd, called the cow-turd bob, from the beginning of *May* to *Michaelmas*; ſome call it a clap-bait; this is like a gentle, but bigger; you may keep it ſometimes in moſs, but the beſt is to keep it in earth, dug up under the place where you find it; it is a very good bait for *trout*; if you angle with it on a briſtled hook, on the top of the water, and in the water, it is taken by *chub*, *carp*, *bream*, *tench*, *dace*, and *roach*.

12. The cod bait, cad-bait, cadiſworm, or caſe-worm, are one and the ſame bait, though of three ſorts. The one is found under ſtones that lie looſe and hollow in ſmall brooks, ſhallow rivers, or very fine gravel, in a caſe or huſk, and when fit for purpoſe, they are yellow; they are bigger than a gentle, having a black or blueiſh head. Another ſort is found in pits, ponds, ſlow-running rivers, ditches, in caſes or huſks of ruſhes, water-

water-weeds, ſtraw, &c. and are by ſome call'd ruff-coats, or ſtraw-worms; theſe are accounted principal baits for *bleak*, *ſalmon*, *ſmelts*, *tench*, *bream*, *chub*, *trout*, *grayling*, *and dace*. The next is a green ſort, found in pits, ponds or ditches, in *March*, coming before the yellow ones, for they are not in ſeaſon till the end of *April*, and in *July* are out of ſeaſon; the third ſort is proper in *Auguſt*, being ſmaller than the other. Theſe muſt be kept tender in woollen bags when you carry them for uſe, but to keep them long alive, in a green withey bark, taken off and hollowed like a trunk, lay it in the dew to moiſten it.

Natural flies for baits, their ſeaſons, and where to be found, for what fiſh they are proper, &c.

1. The ant-flies are found in their hills, about the end of *July*, *Auguſt*, and moſt part of *September*, with the earth you take with them, they may be kept in glaſs bottles; two or three of theſe fixed on the ſmall hook, are certain baits for *chub*, *roach* and *dace*, if you angle under water not above ſix inches from the bottom.

2. The brood of humble bees, hornets and waſps are good baits, dry them over a fire, or in an oven, ſo not being over done, they will laſt long, and ſit handſomely on the hook, to take *chub*, *eels*, *bream*, *flounders*, *roach*, or *dace*; ſome boil them, but then they will not keep long; hornets, waſps, and humble-bees, may be uſed alive, when their wings are a little grown and their legs ſhort, eſpecially for the *chub*, as alſo the black-bee, breeding in clay-walls.

3. The fern-fly or fern-bob, is found among fern from *May-day* to the end of *Auguſt*, it is thick and ſhort of body, has two pair of wings, the uppermoſt reddiſh and hard, which may be taken off: the laſt ten days of *May* the *trout* will take it every day, and the *chub* refuſes it no part of the ſummer.

4. The ſtone-fly and green-drake. The firſt of theſe

theſe is found under hollow ſtones at the river-ſides: the body of it is pretty thick, and almoſt as broad at the tail as in the middle, it is of a curious brown colour, ſtreaked a little with yellow on the back, but much more on the belly; he uſes the water much, and ſeldom flies though he has large wings that double on his back; he comes in about *April*, and contiues till about the end of *June*, and is a very killing fly of *roach*, *dace* and *bleak*: and the green-drake had his wings ſtanding high like a butter-fly, and his motion in flying the ſame, the body is in ſome of a paler, in others of a darker yellow, ribbed with rows of green, long and ſlender; his tail turns up his back, having three long whiſks at the end of it; he comes in about the middle of *May*, and continues till *Midſummer*, and is found by ſtoney rivers: with this bait for *flounders*, *dace*, *bleak*, *roach* and *pearch*.

5. The great moth that has a conſiderable big head with whitiſh wings, is to be found in ſummer evenings in gardens, on trees and plants; it ſpeedily take *chub* if you dibble with it.

6. The hawthorn-fly is black, found frequently on hawthorn-trees, when the leaves are but out, the beſt uſe this can be put to, is to dibb in a river for *trout*.

7. The aſh-fly, woodcock fly or oak-fly, is the ſame, under different names, and holds good from the beginning of *May* to the end of *Auguſt*, its of a browniſh colour, and uſually found in the body of an oak, or aſh, ſtanding with his head downwards towards the root of the tree, and is a very good bait for a *trout*. And to make ſpeedy work, put it long ways on the hook. and at the point a cod-bait, and let them ſink ſix inches or a foot into the water, raiſe it gently, and having a ſhort dibbing line, you need not fear *trouts* in clear water, and inſtead of a cod-bait, if you have it not, you may uſe an oak-worm or green grub, you may dub this, or make it artificially with iſabella, coloured mohair,

mohair, and bright brown bears-hair, wrapped on yellow ſilk. Theſe being the principal flies uſed in angling, I now come to mix'd baits of another nature.

The *bonnet-fly* comes in ſeaſon in *June*; is to be found amongſt any ſtanding graſs, and is an excellent bait for *chub*, *dace*, &c.

Miſcellany of BAITS *very taking, and much in uſe.*

1. *Salmon* ſpawn boiled, and faſtened on the hook, is a very good *bait* for *chub*, and in ſome rivers for *trout*, it being advantageous to the angler, eſpecially in winter and ſpring if he keeps it ſalted; eſpecially in places where *ſalmon* uſed to ſpawn, for thither the fiſh gather to expect it.

2. Graſhoppers the latter end of *June*, all *July* and *Auguſt*, if their legs and outward wings be taken off, eſpecially for *roach*, *trout* and *grayling*, and here you, put a ſlender plate of lead on the ſhank of your hook, ſlendereſt at the bent, then draw your graſhopper over it, after put a leſſer graſhopper, or cod-bait at the point, and keep it moving, lifting up and ſinking again; a *chub* will alſo take the bait freely, and ſo will a *trout* if you dib with it.

3. The water-cricket, water-houſe or creeper is but one, theſe take *trout* in *March* and *April*, and ſometimes in *May*, if you angle at the river: it is to be angled with in clear water, within a foot of the bottom, ſome let it drag on the ground. This creeper is bred in ſtoney rivers, and held to turn into a ſtone-fly, about the middle of *May*, that fly not being any where ſeen before.

Lamery pride, or ſeaven, is a very good bait for *chub*, and *eels*, night or day: this is no other than little live things like ſmall *eels*, no thicker than a ſtraw, and are to be found in ſandy, muddy heaps, near to the ſhoar in rivers.

Snails, the black and white, are good baits for *chub*, very

very early in the morning, *trout* and *eels* take them on night-hooks, but the bellies of the black may be ſlit, ſo that the white may appear; ſome dib for *chub* with houſe crickets.

For chub, *barbel*, *roach*, and *dace*, you may angle with cheeſe or oat-cake, eſpecially at the ledger-bait; the cheeſe you may wrap up two or three days in a wet linnen cloth, or moiſten it over with honey and water.

As for a *pike*, he is a greedy devourer, and therefore moſtly delights in fiſh, frogs, &c. therefore your baits for him muſt be ſmall *dace*, *minows*, *roach*, *ſalmon-ſmelt*, *gudgeon*, *bleak*, *millers-thumb*, alſo *trout* and *eels* well ſcour'd in wheat-bran, to take away the ſlime; and indeed moſt ſort of ſmall fiſh he takes, and how you are to manage them on your hook, I ſhall tell you when I come to treat of the taking him in the river of *thames*. Periwincle, a kind of water-ſnail, is much uſed for *roach*, being taken whole out of its ſhell: *ſhrimps*, taken out of their huſk or ſhell may be us'd as a bait for *chub*, *roach* and *dace*.

Paſtes proper for the angler.

Paſtes are of ſeveral kinds, tho' tending to one and the ſame end: for a *chub* or *chevin*, make a paſte of the fatteſt old cheeſe, the ſuet of a mutton kidney, a little ſtrong runnet, mix them equally and finely together, then put as much powder of turmerick as will give them a fine yellow colour.

For *roach* and *dace*: grate fine bread into a little fine water, wherein gum ivy has been ſoak'd. For the *barbel* in *Auguſt*, make a paſte of new cheeſe and mutton ſuet. For *roach* or *dace*, you may put a little butter to your crumb-bait, and colour it with ſaffron. For *carp* or *tench*, mix crumbs of bread, with honey, though for a *carp* I reckon this the ſureſt.

Take bean-flower, or for want of it, wheat-flower;

the inſide of a leg of young rabbit, catſkin, or whelp, white bees-wax, and ſheeps ſuet proportionable; beat 'em in a mortar, till well incorporated, then moiſten the maſs with clarify'd honey, and work it up into little *balls*, before a gentle fire.

The *chub* in winter takes a paſte made of ſtrong cheſhire cheeſe, beaten with butter and ſaffron till it become a lemon colour.

Stoned cherries, finely grated manchet, ſheep's blood, ſaffron make a good paſte for *roach*, *dace*, *bleak*, *chub*, *trout*, *pearch*; and for the *chub*, only put a little ruſty *bacon* in it.

Another excellent paſte is made of the fatteſt old cheeſe, mutton, kidney-ſuet, ſtrong runnet, anniſeed water, wheat-flour, and the dripping of ruſty *bacon* held againſt the fire.

What is to be obſerved in angling with paſtes.

1. You muſt proportion the quantity of your paſte you put on your hook to the ſmalleſt or largeneſs of the fiſh you angle for, as in other baits.

2. You may try oils upon any of theſe paſtes, and as you ſee your ſucceſs, ſo continue the one or the other. And the beſt for this purpoſe are oil of polypody of the oak, oil of petre, oil of ivy, and as properly gum of ivy, and aſſafœtida.

3. To ſtrengthen any paſte, and ſo prevent its waſhing off the hook, it will not be amiſs to beat a ſmall quantity of fine flax cut ſhort, cotton wool, or fine lint among them, which will prove very binding; thoſe that you would have keep long, put a little white *bees-wax* into them, and anoint them with clarified honey, the latter you may wipe off when you ſee occaſion.

4. Paſte, or tender baits muſt not be angled with in rapid ſtreams, but on a ſmall hook in pits, ponds, meers, or ſlow running rivers: your eye in this ſort of angling

muſt be quick, your rod ſomewhat ſtiff, and a nimble hand to ſtrike or elſe the bait and fiſh will quickly bid you farewell. This is better done with a quill float than a cork, which ſooner ſhews the nibble or bite: and if you then be not very quick, your labour is loſt, and with theſe paſtes ſucceſs is uſually had for *bream*, *bleak*, *chub*, *roach*, *dace*, *carp*, *tench*, *barbel*.

Oils and ointments uſeful in angling.

Take oil of ivy-berries. anoint the inſide of an oaken box with it, and put three or four worms, or other live baits into the box, ſhutting it cloſe; but keep them not there too long, leſt the ſtrength of the oil kill them, but take theſe out and put in more, and ſo they being ſcented with the oil, it will allure the fiſh the more readily to take them. This may be done in the ſame manner, for want of oil with gum-ivy, which is a tear that flows out of the ivy-ſtalks when ſlit, or wounded by piercing.

Oil of ſpike and diſſolv'd gum-ivy, are held to be much attracting, the bait being anointed with them.

Oil of *polipody* of the oak, *venice turpentine*, and new honey is very good, if eight inches of the line next the hook be anointed with it, but then there muſt be two or three hairs, for it will not well ſtick to a ſingle one; however, do not clog your line with it.

Chymical oil of lavender, or for want of it, oil of ſpike ſix drops, three drams of aſſafœtida, *Venice* turpentine one dram, camphire one dram, make theſe into an ointment, and anoint them as the former; this in clear warer wonderfully takes *gudgeons*.

The fat of the thigh-bone of a heron, makes an ointment that rarely fails, and is eſteem'd by thoſe that have try'd it, the beſt of any, being a new experiment.

But let me commend to you above others this; take the oils of cammomil, lavender, anniſeed, each a quarter

ter of an ounce, heron's greeſe, and the beſt of aſſafœtida, each two drams, two ſcruples of cummin ſeed, finely beaten to powder, *Venice* turpentine, camphire and galbanum of each a dram; add two grains of civet and make them into an unguent; this muſt be kept cloſe in a glazed earthen pot, or it loſes much of its virtue; anoint your line with it as before, and your expectation will be ſtrangely anſwer'd.

Oil of aſper ſo much noiſed about, and ſaid to be extracted from a fowl called the *Oſprey*, is now found to be a mixture of the oil of ſpike, lavender, and refin'd oil of turpentine, which however has a conſiderable effect in ſtill or ſlow moving waters; and obſerve in this caſe, your line muſt be anointed every ſecond drawing up, or the ſtrength of the ſcent being waſh'd off, you may expect your ſport to ceaſe.

I might now ſpeak ſomething of artificial flies, and other artificial baits, but not to keep the angler too long from the water, I ſhall have occaſion elſewhere to treat of them.

Fiſhes Haunts proper to be known.

If you are not certain of any waters to fiſh in, your buſineſs is to try the moſt likely and promiſing, *viz.*

Where trees fallen, wood, ruſhes, weeds, or rubbiſh are in rivers, or likely large ponds, there are ſtore of fiſh promiſed, for thither they reſort for warmth and ſhelter; but it is very troubleſome angling there.

The next are weirs, weir-pools, mill-ſtreams, *floodgates*, piles, poſts, pillars of bridges, cataracts and water-falls, eddies, whirling-pits, the ſide of a ſtream, in the ſummer eſpecially; for then they love to baſk and lie ſhallow, unleſs the weather be exceſſive hot; though I may herein except *carp*, *eels*, and *tench* in the winter, find for the generality the deep as the warmeſt, in a gentle ebb and flow by the beating of the waters, at any turning or oppoſing bank, there is good biting, ſo that

that ſtraight rivers are not ſo advantageous to angle in, as thoſe that are winding or crooked, having eddies, pits, and pools in them, occaſioned by the waters beating on the points and doublings; thence being forc'd back, and into thoſe pits and creeks, the fiſh will get in ſome conſierable numbers many times, where the water is narrow, try both ſides: but to come ſomewhat nearer.

The *ſalmon* is found in large ſwift rivers that ebb and flow, gravelly and craggy. The *trout* moſtly in purling brooks and rivers that are ſomewhat ſwift, and have ſandy bottoms. The *carp* and *tench* love ſtill waters, or ſuch as gently move, where weeds or roots of trees are near to ſhelter them on occaſion. *Eels* generally covet muddy rivers, ponds, or ſlimy ſands, eſpecially thoſe of the larger ſize. The *pike*, *bream*, and *chub* are moſtly found in ſandy or clay rivers, brooks or ponds, wherein buſhes, bulruſhes, or flags grow. The *barbel*, *roach*, *dace*, and *ruff*, for the moſt are found in ſandy or gravelly deep rivers, coveting to be under the ſhade of trees. The *umber* is likelieſt to be found in marly or clayey ſtreams, running very ſwift. The *gudgeon* likes beſt a ſandy or gravelly bottom; yet for all this, a trial of divers waters will not be amiſs where you may ſuſpect any fiſh are likely to breed; for experience in this art is the ſureſt inſtructor.

Times proper above others to angle in, according to the water, weather, &c.

1. In the hotteſt months take your opportunity when it is cloudy, and the water is moved by gentle gales.

2. When the floods have carried away the filth, ſudden ſhowers incumber the waters too, and the rivers, *&c.* retain their uſual bounds, looking of a paliſh colour.

3. When a violent ſhower has mudded or troubled the

the water, and after that the ſtream runs ſwift, for then they uſually ſeek for creeks, and ſhelter, and in the little rivulet running into the great one.

4. If you fiſh for *carp* or *tench* do it early in the morning, *viz.* a little before ſun-riſe, till eight, and from four in the afternoon, 'till ſun-ſet, when the days are of a convenient length, *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, but in *March*, the beginning of *April*, and the end of *September*, they refuſe not to bite in the warmth of the day, the wind being ſtill.

5. If you angle for the *ſalmon*, the beſt time is from three in the afternoon 'till ſun-ſet, and in the morning as before; his proper months are *May*, *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*. The *barbel* bites beſt in *May*, *June*, *July*, and the beginning of *Auguſt*, from five to eleven in the morning. The *pearch* and *ruff* all day in very cool and cloudy weather. The *bream* bites from ſun-riſe, till nine or ten in the morning, in muddy water, eſpecially when the wind blows hard, for the moſt part keeping in the middle of the river or pond in *May*, *June*, *July* or *Auguſt*.

6. The *pike* bites in *July*, *Auguſt*, *September* and *October*, about three in the afternoon, in gentle water, and a clear gale. In *Winter* he bites all the day long, and in *April*, *May*, and the beginning of *June*, early in the morning and late in the evening. As for *roach* and *dace*, they bite all the day long, if the weather be not in the extremities of heat or cold, on the top of the water. The *gudgeon* bites beſt in *April*, and till he has ſpawned in *May*, and if the weather be cool, till waſp-time, and at the end of the year all day long in a gentle ſtream; obſerve when you angle for him, to ſtir and rake the ground, and he will bite the better. As for the *flounder*, though he is found only in ebbing and flowing rivers, that have communication with the ſea, he bites freely all day in *April*, *May*, *June*, and *July*, in a ſwift ſtream; he will bite in the ſtill, but not near ſo freely.

Ground

Ground baits to gather and feed the fiſh, that you may better and readily know where to find them, &c.

The ground-baits, or for baiting the ground, are barley or wheat ſoft boiled, which, for prevention of ſcattering, you may mix with ſome pleaſant freſh earth, ale-grains, wheat-bran ſteep'd in ſheep's blood, clotted, dried, and cut in ſmall pieces, periwinkles bruis'd in their ſhells, black and white ſnails, worms cut in ſunder, and made up in little balls of earth. The guts of fowl, the ſmall guts or livers cut ſmall, old cheeſe and oat-cakes bruis'd together, malt groſly ground, theſe eſpecially gather *tench*, *dace*, *carp*, *chub*, *roach*, *bream* and *barbel*; and the more you feed them, they will be the ſurer to keep to that place, and be the fatter to reward your pains when taken; and theſe throw in a little above the place you angle at, if it be a moving water, for before they ground, the ſtream will carry them ſome diſtance from the place you throw at.

Theſe are eſpecially good when you angle with the cod-bait, gentle, waſp, or paſte; for it will make them take your bait more eagerly, and with leſs ſuſpicion. And this directs you to the *pike* or *pearch*, for if thoſe fiſh you angle for be not there, and no others have circumvented you, nor the ſeaſon improper, then are theſe two devourers of fiſh lurking thereabouts; and the reſt dare not approach for fear of being made a prey; therefore uſe ſuitable tackle and baits to take them, and then other fiſh will boldly approach.

When you angle in clear water, keep out of ſight as much as may be, ſhelter'd behind ſome buſh or tree, or by ſtanding as far off as poſſible, keep your eye only on the ſurface of the water, where your float is, and to effect this the better, your rod muſt be proportionable in length, to anſwer the place you fiſh at, and eſpecially at the ground, and a long rod and line at

artificial flies are very neceſſary. An angler muſt add ſilence to his patience, and move his body as little as poſſible may be, for the fiſh are very quick-ſighted, and naturally fearful, particularly the *chub*, *carp*, and *trout*.

When in a clear water you angle at the ground, or with a natural fly dibble, always do it going up the river, but in muddy water, or when you do it with a dib-fly, uſe the contrary; if you have hooked a fiſh, and ſuſpect the ſtrength of your line or rod, let him play and tire within the water, before you offer to bring him near the top; be ſure to keep the rod bent, leſt running to the end of the line, he breaks his hold, or the hook, and if he be tired, and has in a manner done fluſtering, bring him towards the top, and if there be occaſion, uſe your landing-net or hook; and take this for a general rule in hooking all ſtrong fiſh.

How to take the ſalmon *and* ſalmon-ſmelt *by angling*, &c.

The *ſalmon*, tho' not found in many rivers in *England* is of principal note for river fiſh, tho' it as well belongs to the ſea. The chief rivers noted for them are the *Thames*, *Severn*, *Trent*, *Lon* at *Lancaſter*, and about *Cockerſand-Abby* at *Workington* in *Cumberland*, *Bywell* in *Northumberland*, *Durham*, *Newcaſtle on Tine*, *Dee* in *Cheſhire*, and ſome rivers in *Wales*; as *Uſk*, *Wye*, and *Tivy*; he commonly is found in the water deep, and about the middle. They ſpawn in *September*, and come in ſeaſon the beginning of *March*.

His beſt biting is at nine in the forenoon, and three in the afternoon, in clear water, eſpecially when the wind blows againſt the ſtream, but not very roughly: then take the baits directed, and the ſtrongeſt tackle, for when he is ſtruck, he plunges and leaps; though not uſually does he endeavour to go to the end of the line.

The

The younger ſort of theſe are ſo tender mouthed, that unleſs you faſten two hooks almoſt in a quarter of a circle aſunder, they uſually break hold. For the great *ſalmon*, the principal bait is well-ſcour'd dew-worms; for the *ſalmon-ſmelt*, the brandling, gilt-tail, meadow-worm, *&c.* and for flies, he taketh them natural or artificial; and if you uſe theſe, a cod-bait or gentle at the top of the hook is effectual; this with the dub-fly takes *ſalmon ſmelts* beyond expectation; but for a greater *ſalmon*, if your fly be artificial, make it very large, with ſix wings one behind another, that by that and the different colours, he may ſuppoſe it, as indeed it will appear in the water, a cluſter of flies. He is taken at the ground with a running line or float, and ſometimes he bites lower than mid-water at ground-baits; he is taken with oak-worms, dub-flies, cod-baits, clap-baits, and the larger ſort ſometimes take the minow and loach, and for theſe you may angle with a wyer-ring on the top of the rod, letting the line run through it to a great length, and when he is hooked, and is ſpent with plunging, fix your land-hook in his mouth, that is ſcrew'd to the end of a pole, as directed to land him. *Salmon* is the beſt of fiſh, very ſweet, and of extraordinary nouriſhment: eating it moderately, it reſtores in conſumptions; if pickled it ſtrengthens the ſtomach, and begets a good appetite.

Several ways to take the PIKE, *and where to find his haunts*, &c.

The PIKE ſpawns in *March*; his uſual haunts are in ſandy, chalky, or clayey places, ſomewhat near the banks, for coveting ſolitude, he often lurks in holes to ſurprize other fiſh, as they fearleſly ſwim by; ſometimes he ſhelters among bulruſhes, water docks, weeds, or buſhes; and then he bates about the middle of the river or pond, at mid-water, and for him you muſt keep your bait in a gentle motion, and at all times to

be above a foot from the ground; he rarely bites in the night, for then he is for the moſt part gone to reſt in his retirement. In *April*, *May*, *June*, and the beginning of *July*, he does it moſt freely morning and evening in clear water, and a gentle gale in ſtill water, or a moderate moving one, and in the reſt of *July*, *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*, his beſt biting time is about three in the afternoon in water as before: in winter months, if the weather be pleaſing, and the water clear, he will not refuſe to bite at any time, tho' the moſt certain time is about three of the clock in the afternoon, if particularly in a gloomy, cloudy day, but the water muddied with rain, there is no certainty of him; his beloved baits are, *gudgeon*, *roach*, *dace*, *minows*, *ſalmon*, *ſmelts*, no bigger than *gudgeons*, a piece of an *eel*, a young *trout*, *&c.* but all his baits muſt be very freſh, and a live one tempts him much the ſooner, which may be put on by drawing the line between the ſkin and the ribs of the fiſh, and ſo on the hook, faſtning it in the gills, and this you may uſe in trowling, but here have your tackle very ſtrong, with wire about a foot from your hook, the next to it ſilk, and the reſt of the line ſtrong ſpun flax, come as little as you can near the weeds, leſt they ſpoil your bait before the *pike* comes at it, faſten the tail of the bait to the joint of the wire and having fix'd your tackle, that the line may run and play, let ſo much lead be at the hook as may carry the fiſh's head downwards, as if after playing on the top, ſhe was going to the bottom, and when you have ſunk it ſo, that it is at a convenient depth for the *pike*, ſlack your line, and give it ſcope that he may run to his hold, and there pouch to ſwallow it, which you may know by the moving of the line in the water, then with a ſmart jerk hook him; ſome uſe no rod with this, but lead and float, holding of the line in their hands on links, and indeed there are ſeveral

eral methods taken, tho' all to the ſame purpoſe; wherefore for brevity ſake I omit them.

Angling for him at the ſnap, is to give him leave to run a little, and then ſtrike, which muſt be done the contrary way to that which he moves, therefore a double ſpring-hook is uſeful in this way of angling, eſpecially for a great *pike* uſually will hold the bait ſo faſt in his teeth, that you may fail to pull it out of his mouth, and likewiſe ſtrike him, when if he holds the ſpring-hook ever ſo faſt, the wire will draw thro' the bait, and ſo the ſpring opening, you will frequently hook him on the outſide of his mouth. Tho' trowling is ſurer than this, and more practicable, yet this is beſt uſed in *March*, when the *pike* bites ill, then upon ſpawning they are ſick, and loſe their ſtomachs, bait this as the former, and he may be taken this way when he is ſo. A *pike* is more excellent than *carp*: ſick people may eat it: croſs-bone in the head againſt falling ſickneſs: ſpawn or row provokes vomiting and ſtool: heart eaten cures fevers; they are reported to live two hundred years.

Other brief rules for PIKE *angling.*

1. When the *pike* has taken your bait, obſerve how he moves; if ſlowly, give him time, and he will rarely miſs him; let not your bait fall in one and the ſame place above once or twice, for if he take it not, then he is farther off.

2. If you find, after he has taken the bait, he lies ſtill as ſometimes he will, move your hand gently, to give notice which way his head lies, leſt in ſtriking you happen to pull the bait out of his mouth, if that cannot be diſcern'd, ſtrike directly upward: at the ſnap have ſtrong tackle, and give two luſty jerks one after another, faſtening a ſwivel at the end of your line, which muſt be us'd at trowl and ſnap, and your armed wire muſt be hook'd on it.

3. For the ſnap, have a hollow piece of lead, that it may paſs over the wire and end of the hook, which you draw within the fiſh's gills or mouth, that as directed, it may keep the head downward, and at either of theſe baitings, if you cut away one of the fins of the bait cloſe at the gills, alſo behind the vent, and one on the contrary ſide, it will play the better, and ſeem more lively.

4. Be ſure to raiſe your hand in caſting, when the bait is about to fall into the water, ſo that by daſhing, it may not fright him away, and when it is ſunk a little draw it near the top towards you a little, and ſo let it fall again; and if your wire hook is joined with a ſteel ring, the bait will play better, and ſink more direct: for ſnap, *March* is the chief month, *February*, *April*, *May*, *September*, and *October* for the trowl; and tho' a large bait invites him moſt, yet a leſſer takes him more ſurely, but let your bait be ſuitable to your hook; and this way with a *minow*, *loach*, or ſmall *gudgeon*, you may take *pearch*; and if poſſible, always trowl in clear water in a windy day, and then a *gudgeon*, will do well for the *pike*, but if a dark cloudy day, *roach*, *dace*, or *bleak*, are to be preferr'd.

To ſnare a *pike*; when you perceive him raiſe, and ſtaying near the ſurface of the water, faſten about a yard and a half of ſtrong packthread to a pole, and at the end of it a running nooſe of ſmall wire, ſoftly putting it over his head, with a quick jirk throw him to land; this is often done to young *pikes*, but the older are more wary tho' ſometimes catch'd by this means, eſpecially in ponds, as alſo when they come out of rivers, and go a frogging in ditches, in *March*, *April* and *May*.

To find an angle for PEARCH.

The *pearch* ſpawns the beginning of *March*, and delights in a good ſtream of a moderate depth, abiding uſually

uſually cloſe by a hollow bank, pebbly, gravelly bottom'd, with green weeds growing in it; being commonly a river fiſh: he bites little in winter, but in the middle of the day, yet in ſummer all day, if the weather be cool and cloudy, and the water ſhaken with the wind; but more freely from ſeven till ten in the morning, and from two in the afternoon till ſix, and ſometimes till ſun-ſet; if in the middle of ſummer, you muſt look to him when he is ſtruck, for he is a very ſtrong fiſh, and will ſtruggle hard and long; they generally go many together; and if there be a great many in a hole, if you light right on them, you may at one ſtanding, catch the greater part, if you give them time to bite; but if you are too haſty in ſtriking, you may chance to miſs your aim; he takes almoſt all manner of worms; as, dew-worms, red-worms, meadow-worms, cod-bait alſo the *minow*, *bach*, ſmall frogs, waſps, hornets, and humble bees.

He is beſt taken with a float, reſting the bait about ſix inches from the ground, and ſometimes he is taken about mid-water: ſome uſe a ledger-bait on the ground, but the firſt depth has uſually the beſt ſucceſs.

To angle for the CARP, *&c.*

This fiſh has always been in great eſteem, making many induſtrious to find ways to take him. He delights in ſandy or muddy bottoms, in ſtill deep water, by the ſides of a pond or river, tho' in a good pond he thrives beſt. He is very wary, and hard to be catch'd. His firſt ſpawning time is about *May-Day*, breeding three times a year, and wonderfully encreaſes if he likes the water he's in: he lives long, tho' moſt diſagree as to the particular number of years; and indeed I ſee no reaſon how that ſhould be exactly known.

He bites very early in *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, and ſometimes all night if the weather be hot and ſtar-light: in the ſtill deep water, if you angle in

the day-time, keep out of ſight as much as may be therefore provide a long rod: he is very ſtrong, and muſt play when ſtruck, or he'll carry off your hook by breaking the line or rod.

Uſe always the float and quill, angle for him ſometimes above, and ſometimes below mid-water, as the weather is, tho' in mid-water he is the certainlieſt taken, eſpecially in a pond, but in rivers he is very ſhy: lay a ground-bait for him with ground malt.

The baits you uſe on your hook muſt be gentles, or three on the hook; he takes likewiſe bobs, waſps, ſweet paſtes, marſh-worms, flag-worms, gilt-tails, dew-worms, the cod-bait and bread-grain boil'd ſoft; and in *June* and *July*, in the heat of the day, he ſhews himſelf on the top of the water, and oftenеſt among weeds, when you may take him with a well-ſcour'd lob-worm, angling as with a natural fly; but in this caſe keep out of ſight as much as you poſſibly can. A *carp* is a numerous breeder, as ſpawing three or four times a year, and therefore as a caution to thoſe that ſtock ponds with them, let them be warm, and ſecure from cold winds, fenc'd by trees, and the place allowing good feed, or otherwiſe (the *pond* being over-ſtored) they will ſtarve themſelves and other fiſh that are with them.

Carp is a fat and ſweet fiſh, and nouriſhes much.

Obſervations on the TENCH, *and the beſt way to angle for him.*

The *tench* ſpawns the beginning of *July*, is reckon'd a very good fiſh, much coveted, yet delights in muddy or foul water, and among weeds, the ponds that are ſuitable for *carp* pleaſe him better than the rivers, and in pits he thrives better than in either, if they be agreeable to time, tho' in ſome pits they will not (notwithſtanding they breed) come to any bigneſs; and in others they will not breed at all, but they will thrive won-

wonderfully, beyond expectation: this I believe may happen where the ſtorer is not ſkilful to diſtinguiſh males from females, but by an unlucky gueſs puts in all of one ſort. Tho' he covets mudd, yet his fins are very large; and to know him from others, there are two little barbs at the angles or corners of his mouth; his ſcales are ſmall and ſmooth, and about his eyes are circles of a golden colour. He is accounted the phyſician to the reſt, ſo that the devouring *pike*, being ſick, is cured by him, and will not, unleſs hunger provoke, hurt or deſtroy him, tho' he ſpares not his own kind. This gift of healing is ſaid to be by a medicinal balm ſweating from his ſkin, which the ſick fiſh take in as *phyſick*; and indeed, his fleſh is good in conſumptions (or any languiſhing of the parts) for men. They bite beſt from day light to eight in the morning, and from four in the afternoon till ſun-ſet; but in the hot months, if the weather be not tempeſtuous, they many times bite all night. The beſt ſeaſon is from the beginning of *May*, to the end of *September*.

He takes the *cod-bait*, *marſh-worm*, *gentle*, *flag-worm*, or *red-worm* well ſcour'd; and to make it take the better, you may dip your bait in a little tar-water juſt before you uſe it, tho' the plain bait many times pleaſes him well. For want of the former baits, you may uſe paſtes ſweeten'd with honey.

Angle for him with a float of quill, letting the bait into the water two foot, ſometimes more or leſs, but no great matter.

The BREAM's *haunts, and how to angle for them.*

The *bream* ſpawns in the beginning of *July*, is a large bony fiſh, is found in rivers and ponds, but in the latter if convenient, he delights moſt: he is long growing, and will be very fat, and is almoſt as great a breeder as the *carp*.

Breams ſwim divers together in a gentle ſtream

loving a ſandy, or clayiſh bottom, and the deepeſt and broadeſt part of the water. Your beſt time in the ſeaſon is to angle for him from ſun-riſe to eight o'clock, in a moderate ſtream, the water being a little ſlimy or muddy, eſpecially when a good breeze troubles the water; and in windy weather, if in a pond, he generally keeps the middle, and there you are moſt likely to find him. In the afternoon, your time is from three or four till ſun-ſet; but in a darkiſh windy day he bites at any time.

He is angled for with much ſucceſs from the beginning of *April* till *Michaelmas*, and may be taken at other times, except the very cold months.

He takes as baits, flag-worms, gentles, graſhoppers, their legs being off; red-worms, gilt-tails, and meadow-worms well ſcour'd, bobs and under water-flies, eſpecially the green ones; when he bites, he runs off with the bait to the farther ſhoar, or as far that way as he can, and therefore you muſt give him play, for though he ſeems a fiſh made ſtrong enough, he will not much ſtruggle, but after two or three turns he falls on one ſide and may be eaſily landed.

Here you muſt angle with a float, ſo that the bait may touch the ground; you may make a ground-bait for *bream* with malt, and it will draw them together.

The BARBEL, *how to find and take him by angling.*

The *Barbel* ſpawns in *April*, ſometimes in *May*, is a very ſtrong fiſh, and takes his name from the barbs that hang at his mouth, is curiouſly ſhap'd with ſmall ſcales. In the hot months you will find him in the ſwift ſtrong ſtreams, tho' he ſhuns the current, and delights ſomewhat more out of the rapidity, under ſhades of trees, and weeds, where they rout in the ſands like a hog, and ſo neſt; ſome ſuppoſe him to eat much gravel and ſand, but I rather fancy he ſeeks for inſects or other food that heat and moiſture produce

duce in the bottom of ſhallows, yet ſometimes he is found in the deep and ſwift waters, eſpecially at weirs, bridges or floodgates, where he ſhelters among piles, or on hollow places, holding by the moſs or weeds, to prevent his being carry'd away by the ſtream; when winter is coming on, he retires to the ſtill deep.

His beſt biting time is early in the morning, that is, from the ſun riſing till ten, and from four till the ſun ſets, and often later, add this principally happens from the 20th of *May* to the latter end of *Auguſt*; you muſt be wary in taking of him, for he is very ſubtle, and ſtruggles long, unleſs well managed; many are found together frequently, but in *April* they are little worth, for then is the ſpawning time.

As for the baits you intend to take him with, care muſt be taken that they are very ſweet, ſuch as give him not diſtaſte: angle for him with a running-line, and a bullet at the end. He takes gentles, not over-ſcour'd, dew-worms, new cheeſe, paſte, the young brood of waſps and hornets; and ſo cunning he is, that you will be cheated of many a bait in angling for him, if you have not a watchful eye, and a quick hand; for he will nibble and ſuck it off, and ten to one, when your float ſinks, and you attempt to ſtrike, whether he has the hook in his mouth, yet often, if you ſtrike the contrary way his head lies, you may take him by the noſe, and give him play till tired, or elſe, if he be any thing large, unleſs your tackle be very ſtrong, part of it goes with him. He is not an over-pleaſant fiſh to eat, by reaſon he is ſomewhat dry, and very full of bones. Some ſay he is eaſy of concoction, his eggs and ſpawn vomit and purge violently.

The TROUT's *haunts: the beſt way to angle for him, and his baits.*

The *trout* ſpawns in *October*. His uſual haunts are in

in ſmall purling brooks, or ſwift gliding rivers, not too great. Obſerve whether their bottoms are pebble, gravel, or ſmooth ſtones; for on the ſides of theſe he uſually has his reſidence, though he is often found in the deep, eſpecially a large one, alſo behind banks, blocks, ſtones, at turnings or points, where the ſtream much beats, or makes a kind of whirling; he loves coverture and ſhade, from whence he may moſt eaſily ſeize his prey; but his hold or hole is uſually in deep places; he is ſeldom found among weeds, rather among boughs of trees that hang in the water, or ſhady buſhes: he plies in ſpring at the tail of the ſtream, but, as many other fiſh do about the middle of *May*, at the upper end, ſtaying long in a place, if his hold be near it. In the hot weather he leaves the deep, and goeth into the ſharp ſtreams among gravel, unleſs by the exceſſive heat of the weather, droughts enſue, and then the ſtill deep delights him.

This *trout* may be taken by dibbing, or if the weather be dark, cloudy, and windy, you may take him with the caſt-fly. He is in ſeaſon from *March* untill *Michaelmas*, but chiefly about the end of *May*, when he is in the beſt ſeaſon; his body is adorned with red ſpots. The female is counted better than the male: they much affect to be near the ſource or ſpring of rivers, and where they run on lime ſtones, there the beſt of *trouts* are found.

Angle for him at the ground with a running line, with two or three ſmall pellets of lead, omitting the float, or you may take him by float-angling at the ground, if you are dexterous at angling with a ſingle hair, two links from your hook, he is much ſooner taken than with two or three hairs, though you muſt be cautious he break not the line; and this is better done at the bottom than top, becauſe there he has not ſo much force to ſhoot and ſpring, as on the top, and a ſingle hair next the hook, if well choſen and ſtrong

will

will take one of thirteen inches, if there be water-room, free from wood and weeds.

He bites beſt in a water that after a flood is clearing, or riſing, ſomewhat troubled, cloudy and windy weather; early in the morning is the beſt time from the middle of *April* to the end of *Auguſt*, from ſun-riſing till near eleven, and from two till ſun-ſet; but at nine in the morning, and three in the afternoon are the beſt times, at the ground or fly as the water is moſt agreeable, in *March*, the beginning of *April*, *September*, and till the 15th of *October*, and then you muſt ceaſe angling for the *trout*, to the end of *February*, after a ſhower has fallen in the evening; you will find him riſe at a gnat. In warm weather you may dib for him with the minow or loach.

As for other baits than what I have mentioned, the principal are at the ground, brandlings, gilt-tails, tag-tails, meadow-worms, and for the greater, dew-worms well ſcoured, the two firſt hold him all the ſeaſons, either in muddy or clear waters, the reſt do well when the water is diſcoloured with rain, you may uſe a cod-bait, either for top or bottom; but then it muſt be in clear water; he taketh the palmer-fly or wool-bed, and all ſorts of artificial and natural flies at the top of the water. When you bait with ſmall fiſh, as the minnow, bull-head, and loach, cut off their fins, and the gills of the latter, and ſo with theſe inſtructions, and a little practice to ripen experience, depend on ſucceſs.

The EEL, *the haunt*, *bait*, *and taking them*, &c.

There are many diſputes about the generation of *eels*, whether they generate and breed as other fiſh do, or proceed from putrefaction, enliven'd by heat and moiſture; but my buſineſs being to inſtruct you how to come by them, I ſhall lay no ſtreſs on that nicety, ſince

ſince *eels* there are, and for their delicacy, are call'd by ſome, *the queen of fiſh.*

His haunts, in the day time, are uſually under the covert of tree-roots, bruſhwood, planks, or piles, about flood-gates, wears, or mill-dams, in hollow holes in banks, they moſtly delight in foul ſtill water, or at leaſt ſuch as runs very ſlow, with ouſy ſand, or muddy bottoms, in pits, ponds and meers.

Bait for him with a young lamprey, dew-worms, ſcour'd earth worms, and very ſmall fiſh, their fins cut off, guts of chickens, or other fowl, cut in ſmall lengths, lean beef, the brood of waſps; the four firſt take him day or night, but moſt of the reſt are proper for night-hooks.

Take him in the day by a ledger-bait, by ſnigling, bobing, brogling; as for brogling and ſnigling, the beſt method I have known is this: get a long and ſtrong line, your hook of a ſmall compaſs, baited with ſcour'd red-worm, or dew-worms, having one end of your line in your hand, place very eaſily the upper end of your hook in the cleft of a hazel rod of a convenient length ſo that it may ſlip out as you pleaſe, and where you fancy the *eel*, to be, let the bait leiſurely ſink, and ſuppoſing it ſwallowed by giving time leiſurely, draw him up by little and little, eaſy lying double, with the ſtrength of his tail, your line is endanger'd. This you muſt practice in hot weather, the waters being low.

As for bobbing, take large earth-worms out of good mold, ſcour them well in moſs, and run a ſtrong thread with a needle through them endways, as many as will lightly wrap a dozen times round your hand, make them into links, and faſten them to a ſtrong pack-thread or whipcord, two yards long or more; make a knot about ſix or eight inches from the worms, put about three quarters of a pound of plummet, made pyramidically on the cord, by the means of a hollowneſs

or

or hole bored through it, and let it ſink to the knot, fix the cord to a manageable pole. Angle with this in muddy or cloudy water, in the ſides of the ſtreams or deeps; when the *eel* or *eels* tug, let them be well faſten'd by the teeth, before you draw them up, then do it gently, 'till on the top, and then hoiſt them quickly to land: many by this way have been taken at a time.

Some, near *eels* haunts, ſink a bottle of hay looſly bound, ſtufft with fowls guts and liver, cut in long ſhreds over night, and coming early the next morning, drawing it up haſtily by the rope, faſten'd to the band, find large *eels*, bedded in it, for the ſake of the *prey*. This may be done with a bundle of the bruſh-wood, out of which, upon pulling up, they cannot ſo eaſily get.

To angle, &c. *for the* grayling *or* umber.

Though this fiſh has two names given it; the former for the leſſer ſort, and the latter for the greater, yet both are the ſame ſpecies.

Their haunts are in marly clay; clear water, and ſwift ſtreams, the large is accounted eighteen inches, being in ſeaſon all the year, but their prime is in *December*, when his gills and head are blackiſh, and his belly a dark grey, ſtudded with black ſpots. He will bite freely, but is very tender mouth'd, therefore be careful he break not his hold, though he will not ſtruggle much, as being very faint when he is hooked. Angle for him in or near the middle of the water, for he is always more apt to riſe than deſcend, wherefore he is chiefly taken by a ground-bait, rather than a running line; uſe for him a float of cork, if you particularly angle for him, but for a *grayling* and *trout*, the running line is beſt.

As for baits, he takes brandlings, gilt-tails, meadow-worms, tag-tails, the bark-worm, flag-worm, cod-bait, natural or artificial flies, particularly the camlet fly, and

and a fly made of purple wool, and one made of tawny chamblet hair, alſo the earth-bob, and clap-bait.

The POPE *or* RUFF, *his haunts, how to angle for him with proper baits*, &c.

The *pope* or *ruff* is one, in ſhape, nature, and diſpoſition, like the *pearch*, though in bigneſs not exceeding a large *gudgeon*, but of a more pleaſing taſte; he bites eagerly, and many of them are uſually together, where the water runs ſlowly, and is deep in ſandy places, fifty of them have been taken at a ſtanding. You may bait for him with the ſmall red-worm, gilt-tail, meadow-worm, and other baits proper for the *pearch*, he biting at the ſame time the *pearch* does; you may ground bait with new turned up earth of a fallow, alſo with a clear ſand, you may take him with a ſingle hair, the link next the hook, the body of it is rough, and hath prickly and ſharp fins; it has its ſeaſons and nature like the *pearch*, and is a very wholeſome fiſh, eating ſhort and tender.

There are abundance of them to be killed in *Moulſea* river in *Surry*.

Some particular obſervations on GUDGEON *angling*.

The *gudgeon*, tho' not over large, is approved, among other fiſh, as a dainty, being very wholeſome food. This fiſh ſpawns twice or thrice in the year, he delights in ſharp ſtreams, with gravelly or ſandy bottoms, and ſhews the young angler extraordinary good ſport, who not being well ſkilled in chuſing, or not well knowing how to come by other baits may take him with a ſmall red-worm on the gronnd, or very near it, and ſeldom, by reaſon of the toughneſs of his mouth, he is loſt when ſtruck. In the heat of ſummer they make to the ſhallows in rivers, but when the weeds in autnmn grow of a bad taſte, or rot, and cold weather comes on, then they get together in deep places; and

here

here it is propereſt to fiſh for them at the ground, or a little above it, if you fiſh with a float; but it may be done with a running line on the ground, without a float: as for particular baits, I have already diſcourſed of them, and among others, thoſe relating to the *gudgeon*.

The BLEAK *or* BLEY, *to angle for him*, &c.

This fiſh makes ſport, tho' not much valu'd, not being very wholeſome, it is many times deſtroy'd by a worm that breeds in his ſtomach; in hot weather he bites eagerly, and you may fiſh for him with ſeveral hooks on one line, and if you catch three or four together on the ſeveral hooks, do not fear the breaking of your line, tying them about half a foot one above the other; he is eaſily taken with gentles, ſmall red worms, and any ſmall flies at top water, by dibbing or whipping for them.

Angle at middle water, or at the top, for he is uſually in motion: there is another ſort of theſe called the *black ſea*, better and wholeſomer than this, call'd by ſome the *ſea camelion*, becauſe in the winter he ſeems often to change his colour. He is as good as any *carp*.

The CHUB *or* CHEVIN, *his haunts, and to angle for him.*

The *chub* ſpawns in *March* is large, tho' timorous; is found in large rivers, having ſandy or clayey bottoms, delights much in ſtreams ſhaded with trees, as alſo in holes where many of them conſort together: he is in ſeaſon from the middle of *May* 'till after *Candlemas*; you may take him dibbing on the top of the water, but in the hot months he keeps mid-water; in the colder weather angle at the bottom with the ledger-bait.

He bites from ſun-riſing 'till eight, and from three till ſun-ſet; the large one when ſtruck, is ſooneſt tired, the leſs will ſtruggle longer, and in ſun-ſhiny weather they bite, in winter the middle of the day.

He

He ſcarcely refuſes any bait, if not too large; as, lampreys-pride, the *eel's* brood, dew-worms ſcoured in moſs and gravel, clap-baits, ſmall ſnails, white and black cheeſe paſte, the marrow of an ox or cow's back, a beetle with the legs off, and all ſorts of baits bred on trees, plants and herbs, cod-baits, broods of waſps, hornets and humble-bees, the fat of ruſty bacon, dors, graſhoppers, alſo a fly, and a cod-bait, and an oak-worm on the hook together, infallibly takes him in the hot months.

When he is taken, he muſt be eaten the ſame day, elſe will not be ſo good; moſt eſteem his head the beſt part.

DACE *or* DARE, *and* ROACH, *their haunts, baits, &c. and how to angle for them.*

As theſe delight in ponds or rivers with gravelly bottoms or ſand, ſo they love deep clear waters, ſhaded with trees, either in rivers or elſe-where; the *dace* ſpawn about the middle of *March*, and are in ſeaſon three weeks after. The fleſh is ſoft, and ſweet in taſte.

You muſt angle for the *dace* within two inches of the bottom, and ſometimes the bait may touch it if it is worms, but if with flies, at the top of the water, or within an inch.

The *roach* ſpawns about the middle of *May*, and is ſo healthful, that his ſoundneſs has created a common ſaying, tho' it often cauſes ſome to tell lyes. The beſt *roach*, by reaſon of the abundance of foil, are found in the *Thames* near *London*, angle for him about two foot in the water: in temperate weather they bite all day long. The float angle takes 'em beſt.

Their baits are numerous as their fry, *viz.* worms bred on trees, plants, or herbs, gentles, cod baits, graſhoppers with the legs off, flies artificial or natural, particularly the ant fly, meadow-worms, ſcowr'd bread-corn boil'd. The *roach* in ponds is chiefly found under

under the water-docks, if there be any, and indeed few ſmall come amiſs to them.

The FLOUNDER *or* FLOOK'S *haunts, baits, and angling.*

It is properly a ſalt-water fiſh, and is no where but in rivers that have communication with the ſea; he's brought up by the tide, and looſing himſelf into freſh ſtreams, he after ſome time minds not his way back again. He loves gentle ſtreams, gravelly and ſandy bottoms, is very ſhy, and not eaſily taken: he bites all the day in *May*, *June*, *July*, and the beginning of *Auguſt*, tho' he will nibble much about the hook, and ſuck off the bait, if you be not wary to keep it in motion, which hinders him from ſeeing the hook, if he does, away he flies from it, ſometimes in the ſhallow. He takes ſcoured meadow or marſh-worms, earth-worms, gentles, the brood of waſps, gilt-tails and brandlings. He is to be angled for with the float, and your bait muſt touch the ground. He's of good nouriſhment, ſtrengthens the ſtomach, cauſes appetite, and helps the ſpleen.

To take the SMELT *with an angle.*

As this fiſh generally lies at the tail of ſhips, or in brooks, ſo you fiſh for him at half-tide, with a gentle. The firſt you catch cut in ſmall pieces about the bigneſs of a gentle, bait your hook with them, and you'll find ſport to admiration.

The MINOW *or* PERCH, LOACH, *and* BULL-HEAD *or* MILLER'S-THUMB, LAMPREYS.

As they are rather baits for other fiſh than valuable in themſelves, ſo the firſt is taken with ſmall worms, brandlings, and gilt-tails; the two latter with gilt-tails, meadow-worms at the ground. *Lampreys* are taken as the *eel*, being much of that nature, therefore I avoid enlarging thereon.

Minows

Minows feed by licking one another; the *loach* is good for women with child, and are all very nouriſhing.

Obſervations on, and rules for, natural fly-angling.

It is a nice point in angling, requiring a quick or ſharp eye, and wary hand; it is term'd by artiſts, *dibbling*, *diping*, or *dapeing*, and is performed on the ſurface of the water, or at moſt ſometimes not letting the *bait* ſink above two or three inches under, nor that, unleſs the *oak fly* for the *chub* or *trout* has joined to it a *clap-bait* or *cod bait*.

This muſt ever be done in clear water, without lead or float, in the evening of a hot day, but in a hot calm day is beſt, and the ſtill deep is to be preferred before the ſtream; though on the ſide of a ſtream when the water is clearing after great rains or a flood, is very proper; and all hours you may dib with the green *drake-fly*; but if you needs muſt do it in the ſtream, uſe the *ſtone-fly*; which is proper early or late; if it be windy in the evening, take the artificial *ſtone-fly*, for then in the ſtream the fiſh riſe beſt, and are the ſooneſt taken; and if you pull off the wings, you may angle in the water with it; it will alſo take very much in a ſtream near the bottom, but you muſt take care to keep out of ſight as much as poſſible, and keep your fly in motion, that it may appear to the fiſh to be alive.

In dibbing for *dace*, *roach*, or *chub*, let not your motion be ſwift, if you can perceive any of them coming toward it, but make two or three ſhort removes, as if there were a reſt, or the fly were ſwimming or playing; then let it gently glide with the ſtream if poſſible toward the fiſh; but if it be ſlow or ſtanding water, you muſt keep it moving with your hand, not juſt upon him, but ſideways and floaping by him, leſt it ſhould eſcape him, it will make him mind it the more; for only

only the *trout*, if it be moved ſwiftly, will of any certainly follow it.

In a calm, dibbing is not ſo ſafe as when a pretty good gale ſtirs the water, for then neither you nor the deceit put on the fiſh by an artificial fly is ſo eaſily diſcovered; and then few natural flies at liberty can lie on the water; but for want of choice they will ſnap at the firſt that comes in their way, biting more eagerly thro' hunger. If they will not riſe at the top, try them a little lower, for ſome will be ſooner taken, as the *roach* particularly, by dibbing under water than at the top. *Roach*, *dace*, and *chub* will ſometimes be pleas'd with an artificial fly, eſpecially if an earth-bob, cod-bait, earth-worm, or gentle, be put on the point of the hook; or an oak-worm is very pleaſing on the top or under the water.

At dibbing and trailing, *trout* and *ſalmon-ſmelts* will take an artificial fly well, particularly the *ſtone-fly* and *green-drake*, early, or late in the evening. And if you fiſh for *ſalmon-ſmelt*, *roach*, *chub* or *dace*, with the dub-fly, put on a gentle, waſp, cod-bait, or clap-bait; let it ſtand well on the point of your hook when the wind furls the waters, and few flies appear on or over it, this is the beſt time to angle with the fly either natural or artificial; for, having no variety or choice, they will quickly take your bait. If it be a ſun-ſhiny day, get under the ſhade of trees if you can, that neither your ſhadow nor that of your rod may appear, and ſo fright them away. If you find the fiſh riſe not toward the top, ſink your fly by degrees, and try even to middle-water, for before the ſorts of flies are naturally in ſeaſon, the fiſh very rarely riſe at them; wherefore to know this, that you miſtake not in your baiting, obſerve what flies are on the water, or flying near over it, or are on the buſhes or trees near ponds or rivers, and that fly which ſwarms there moſt is chief in ſeaſon, and is to be uſed either natural, or to be imtatied

tated by art. Some open the firſt fiſh they take, and look in its ſtomach to ſee what indigeſted food there remains, and from thence do take their meaſures, tho' uncertain; for either it muſt be partly conſumed, or ſo diſcoloured that it cannot well be known; beſides, fiſh for extream hunger take in ſuch food at one time as at another they altogether diſlike.

You may for other baits found in rivers, grope in the ſandy bank-ſides within the water, under the ſtones, or obſerve what inſects are playing or ſwimming in or on the ſurface of the water, and accordingly provide yourſelf ſeaſonable baits. In *May* you may dib with oak-flies, fern-flies, or oak-worms for *trout*, and all ſummer with the fern-fly for *chub*, keeping the bait moving on the top of the water, as if it were alive, and yourſelf out of ſight as much as poſſible.

Artificical fly-Angling.

Artificial dub-fly or caſt-fly angling is ſomewhat more difficult, and requireth more cunning than the former, being more readily learned by ſeeing it done, than by printed directions; however, I doubt not but to give a ſatisfactory account of it to the angler.

The firſt thing to be materially conſidered is, to know and chuſe the proper colours of flies in ſeaſon when you angle, and theſe muſt be proportioned to the places you fiſh in; for there are different haunts of flies, and are found much earlier in ſome places than in others, as the ſeaſon proves hot or cold; a warm ſpring brings them early, but the contrary later, ſometimes by a month, and always ſooner in high grounds than in thoſe that are low, marſhy or boggy.

And though ſometimes upon diſguſt, fiſh ſuddenly change their fly, yet it is not uſual until they have been glutted with one ſort, which muſt be ſome time firſt, and when that ſort of fly is near going out; nor will they freely take them till they are at their beſt, and moſt

moſt plentiful: and it always follows, when one ſort goes out another comes in; which you muſt have a ſpecial regard to obſerve, and make the change with them.

The fly required being got, your next buſineſs is, to make one in colour, ſhape, proportion of body and wings as like it as poſſible, always having the natural one as a pattern: and to do this, you muſt have in readineſs bear's hair of diverſe colours, camel's hair ſad, light and of a middle indifferent colour, badger's hair, ſpaniel's hair, ſheep's wool, hog's hair, hog-doun, as is comb'd from the roots and briſtles of a hog, camblets and mohairs of diverſe colours, cow's hair, abortive calves and colts-hair, furrs of ſquirrels tails, the tails of black cats, yellow and dun cats, of hare's neck, the fern-colour'd ferret's fur, martin's yellow fur, filmer's fur, tails of white weaſels, moles, black rabbets, down of a fox's cub, aſh-colour at the roots of fox, fur that comes off the otter and otter-cub, blackiſh and brown badger's hair that has been in a ſkinner's lime-pit; hackles or feathers about a cock or capon's neck, and ſuch as hang looſely down each ſide the tail, of various colours, particularly to make the palmer-fly or inſect call'd the wool-bed: you muſt have feathers of all ſorts of fowl, and thoſe colour'd ones required that you cannot get natural, you may dye.

You muſt likewiſe have *caddows* or *blankets*, from which are got dubbings, or ſoft cuſhions made of ſkins of abortive calves and colts, like ſilver wire, gold twiſt, white and yellow bees-wax for ground work, or to frame the bodies and heads on, as the nature of the fly more or leſs requires it, and a neat pair of ſharp pointed ſciſſars, to trim and ſhape the work with.

How to make the dub-fly.

Wet your materials to know how they will hold colour,

colour, for, tho' dry, they may appear of the right colour, but may alter being wetted, and conſequently be too light or too dark. This done, take the hook in your left-hand, betwixt your fore-finger and thumb, the ſhanks back upwards, and ſtrong ſilk of that colour the fly requires, wax it with wax of the ſame colour, then draw it to the head of the ſhank betwixt your finger and thumb, and whip it about the bare hook two or three times; draw your line between your thumb and finger, holding the hook ſo faſt, that it may only have a ſpace to paſs by; ſo joining the hook and line, put on the wings, faſhion the body and head, by twiſting the dubbing on your waxed ſilk, and lapping it on, then work it by degrees toward the head, and part the wings of an even length; or the fly will not ſwim upright; then turn it into a proper ſhape, by nipping off the ſuperfluous dubbing from the ſilk, ſo faſten and accoutre the fly. It would be convenient to ſee one done by an experienc'd angler, and then theſe directions will be eaſy to you.

Directions relating to dub-flies, and angling with them.

1. When you proportion your *dub-fly*, conſider the largeneſs or ſmallneſs of the fiſh you intend it for, and be ſure the belly of it is the exact colour, becauſe that is moſt obvious.

2. Let not the tail of the fly be only to the bend of the hook, and not come unto the bent of it.

3. If the *trout* at the top of the water refuſe it, the day is not proper for it, or the fly is either out of ſeaſon or ill made.

When you angle with the *dub-fly*, it muſt be in ſuch a river or water as is clear, after rain, or in a river a little diſcoloured with moſs or bogs, in mooriſh places, or elſe in a cloudy or gloomy day, when the water is ſtir'd by gentle gales; or if the winds be pretty high

high they will riſe in the plain deep, but in little wind, the beſt is to angle in the ſtream.

Keep your fly in continual motion in all weathers, to prevent the fiſh from diſcerning the fraud; in clear and low water, let the body of the fly be the ſmaller, and the wings very ſlender. In dark weather and thick water, let the fly be of a darkiſh colour, but it muſt be pretty large body and wings, the better to be diſcovered; in a clear day, a light coloured fly is preferable.

A rod for the dub-fly ſhould be five yards at leaſt, and the line about ſeven, or ſomewhat more, if the water be free from incumbrance of weeds, *&c.* and to adapt your fly to the colour of the water more properly, have three of the ſort, the one light, the next a degree darker, and the third the true colour of the natural fly; by trying all which you may gain the more experience; for one of them cannot well miſs. In ſlow rivers, muddy and ſlimy bottom'd, in great droughts expect little ſucceſs, but rather chuſe pebbly, ſandy, or ſtony bottoms, in a running ſtream, which much cools and refreſhes the fiſh in the hot months.

Let your eye be ſteady on what you are about, and your hand ready to ſtrike when it is convenient, which is with the riſing of the fiſh; or he, finding his miſtake, will throw out the hook again: but for a great fiſh, I muſt hold it proper to let him turn his head with the bait, which will leſs ſtrain your tackle, for ſo he will ſtrike himſelf, and then do it moderately.

Upon caſting, do it with a little circling about your head, by waving the rod, or elſe the fly may with too ſmart a jirk be apt to ſnap off; caſt the fly behind a *trout*, at his riſing, and ſo with a gentle hand, draw it over his head, ſo that not ſcaring him, he will quickly take it, if it be the right colour.

In caſting, obſerve to do it always before you, that it may fall on the water, and no part of the line daſh,

to ſcare away the fiſh: and do it if you can without making any circle in the water: But if the winds be high, ſome part muſt be in the water, to keep the fly from being blown out. Take your ſtanding ſo, if poſſible, that the ſun may be in your face, and wind to your back.

In ſtill or ſlow water, caſt your fly almoſt a-croſs the river or pond, and draw it towards you gently a little way, that you break not the water, or put it in trouble, and let it bear with the current, if there be any, fiſhing downwards and not upwards of the river. Thus having, as I hope, given plain inſtructions in theſe matters, to be underſtood by eaſy capacities, I proceed to deſcribe artificial flies, for the proper month of angling with them.

Artificial FLIES, *proper in the month of the fiſhing ſeaſon, how to make them.*

In *February*, the palmer-fly or plain hackle muſt have a rough, black body, which may be done with black ſpaniel's hair, or the whirl of an oſtridge feather, and the red hackle of a capon, all over.

The prince dun, that may be dubbed of the down of a fox cub, with aſh-coloured ſilk, the wings of a ſtare's feather; this muſt be made little.

The little red, brown dub, with the ſoft hair of the black ſpot of a hog's ear, the wings of mallard's feathers, near the white, wrap it on with red ſilk.

March. The green-tail may be made of the brown hair of a ſpaniel, taken from the outſide of the ear, and a little from the extream of the tail.

Moriſh brown may be dubbed with black ſheep's wool, red ſilk, and the wings made of a partridge's wing-feather.

Thorn-tree fly dub, of a very good black, mix a little *Iſabella* colour'd *mohair*; with it make a little body, and the wings of a *Mallard*'s brighteſt feather's.

The

The early *bright brown* make of the hair of a brown ſpaniel, that of the flank of a red cow, and wing it with the grey feather of a wild duck.

April. The violet-fly, which takes excellently from the ſixth to the tenth, made of bear's hair a light dun, mix'd with violet ſtuff, wing it with the greaſy feathers of a *mallard:* The horſe-fleſh fly, which laſts all this month, dub with pink colours, blue *mohair*, and *tammy*, let the head be a dark brown, and the wings of a light colour.

The ſmall bright brown is very well taken in a clear day and water, make it of ſpaniel's fur, with a light grey wing.

May. The green drake, an excellent killer, dub on a large hook with *camel's* hair, bright bear's hair, ſoft down comb'd from the briſtles of a hog, mix yellow camlet; let the body be long, and rib it with green ſilk mixt with yellow; let the whiſks of his tail be the long hair of *ſables*, his wings the light grey feather of a *mallard*, dy'd yellow.

The ſtone-fly dub, with dun bear's hair, mix it with a little brown and yellow camlet, that ſhe may be yellower on the belly and tail than any other part, to be the better liked by the fiſh, who moſtly eye the belly of baits; and to adorn it the more, place two or three hairs of the beard of a black cat on the top of the hook, in the whipping or arming, and in warping on your dubbing, ſtaring one from another ſomething upright: rib her with yellow ſilk; make the wings long and large, of the dark grey feather of a *mallard*, or other ſuch-like feather.

The grey drake comes in when the great ones go out, much of ſhape with it, but in colours differs, and muſt be made of a paler and more blewiſh yellow and green, his ribs quite down his body muſt be of black, with black ſhining wings very thin, and may be made of the grey feathers of a *mallard*, the down under hogs

briſtles, and the black hair of a ſpaniel, and the wiſks of his tail, of the beard of a black cat.

June. The ant-fly is dubbed with brown and red camlet, the wing of the feathers of a ligh grey pidgeon.

The purple-fly, with purple wool, mix'd with light-brown bear's hair, the wings of a ſtare's feather, dub it with purple ſilk.

The brown hackle made of the lighteſt brown hair of a ſomewhat grown colt, with a red hackle or cock's neck-feather over it, wrap'd with *hair-colour* or *aſh-colour'd ſilk.*

July. Orange-fly, dub this with orange-colour'd cruel or wool, and the feather of a black-bird's wing.

The waſp-fly. Do this with brown dubbing, or elſe with the hair of a black cat's tail; rib it with yellow ſilk and make the wings of the grey feather of a *mallard*'s wing.

The blue dun muſt be made with the down of a water-mouſe, and the blewiſh dun found on an old fox; mix them well together, and dub with ſad aſh-coloured ſilk; the feather's of a ſtare's quill will furniſh you with wings.

Auguſt. The late ant-fly may be dubbed of the hair of a cow that is of a blackiſh brown, and for the tagging of the tails wrap in ſome red, and make the wing of a dark feather: this fly takes admirably.

The fern-fly muſt properly be dubbed with the wool taken from a hare's neck, of the colour of fern, when dry, make the wings of the darkiſh grey feather of a *mallard.*

The hearth-fly, dub of the wool of an aged black ewe, with ſome grey hair to accommodate the body and head, dub with black ſilk, and take the light feather of a ſtare for the wings.

September.

September. The little blue dun made of the fur of a water-mouſe, dub it with ſad aſh-colour'd ſilk, and wing it with the feather of a blue pigeon.

The late badger. Do this with badger's hair that's black, whip with red ſilk, and uſe a darkiſh gray mallard's feather for the wings.

The camel-broom fly, pull out for dubbing, the hair in the lime of old wall, whip it with red ſilk, make the wings of a ſtare's lighteſt feather.

October. This month is ſupplied by the flies of the former, for all being now upon their going away, and almoſt any will do. And thus, reader keeping to my intended brevity, having pick'd you out the beſt killing flies from a great many more, you by knowing how to make theſe may eaſily imitate all others, having a natural fly before you, and chuſing materials ſuitable to its colour, by ſhaping her according to the other; then promiſe yourſelf ſucceſs in angling with her as as directed.

Thus I have given the beſt directions I could, relating to artificial flies, *but thoſe who do not care to trouble themſelves with making them, may have of all ſorts very well made at Mr.* John Hero's, *in* Bell-Yard, Temple-Bar.

Various, but curious OBSERVATIONS *in* ANGLING; *divers ways to* angle, *not commonly known.*

Note, that ſometimes all ſorts of fiſh take baits at the ground, when but ſome ſorts will take the fly at the top of the water; and therefore to angle for a *trout* with worm, chuſe the running line without any float, only ſmall plummets in their proper places. This is ſucceſsful at the ground, either in clear or muddy water.

As for the latter, uſe a line a little more than half the length of the rod, and ſometimes leſs than that

length, and the lowermoſt links muſt be at leaſt three hairs, and one at top of four, whereof have a water-nooſe at its bottom; ſo proceed with links of five or ſix hairs a piece, 'till you come to the top-moſt, make the lower of *cheſnut-colour*, or *ſorrel-brown*. Then to your reed or cane, have a top neither too ſtiff nor too feeble, but between both; the cane about three yards and a half long, and the top about a yard and a half, or near two yards, in one or two pieces, and five or ſix inches of whale-bone, ſmooth round and pliant.

Obſerve to lead your line as is conſiſtent with the water, in rough ſtreams more than in ſmall gentle ſtreams, and leaſt of all in ſtill water; then carry the top or point of your rod level with your hand, and ſo you will by the point of your rod perceive the bite at the ground, then ſtrike ſtrait and gently upwards, and by a little ſlacking your hand before, you will give the fiſh time the better to take the bait.

Some are of opinion, if you know that a *trout* bites, for to ſtrike at the firſt biting, but this is only allowed in clear water for *ſalmon-ſmelts*, *trout*, and *grayling*; and the bait is the beſt red worms ſcour'd, or a brandling and gilt-tail, turned head to tail, and run croſs ways through the middle, under the wings, and ſo you may do in muddy water with other *worms*, as two *brandlings*, two *meadow-worms*, &c. A *trout* will ſeize on the bait when it drags on the ground, either in clear or muddy water, but a large *grayling* will rather riſe a foot or more at your bait from the bottom, than deſcend.

If a large trout you angle for in muddy water, then it requires ſome art in baiting of your hook, as ſuppoſe the bait is a dew-worm, here you muſt thruſt the hook in towards the tail, a little above the middle, and out again below the head, then draw him above the arming of the hook, or whipping, ſo put the point into the head of the worm, until it is very near the

place

place where the point of the hook firſt came out, and ſo draw back the worm, or that part that was above the ſhank. This hook ſhould be indifferent large.

To bait two worms in muddy water for a *trout*, &c. from eight to ten inches: take meadow worms or brandlings, or a brandling and gilt-tail, and run the point of the hook in at the head down the body, till it paſs the knot, or come to the middle of the worm; then ſtrip it above the arming or whipping, not bruiſing it in any manner with your fingers, ſo put on the other, by running the hook in the ſame manner, and let the head of it juſt cover the point of the hook, then ſlip the firſt down till the knots or middle of both worms meet together; and thus you may do by any other worms, for other fiſh, as by the foregoing directions you find they take them.

Directions for ANGLING *with the running line in clear water.*

Put a gilt-tail and ſmall brandling on your hook, as before directed, well ſcour'd, and here your hook muſt be much ſmaller than in muddy water, two or three of the lowermoſt links of your line of a ſingle hair, ſo riſe from two or three, or four, of a grey or duſkiſh white, the line about two yards ſhorter than the rod, leaded with a ſmall black plummet.

Angle with this in the ſtream always up it, in a river with a light hand, ſtill caſting up the worm before you; let the rod be as the former: and thus you may angle for *ſalmon-ſmelts*, *trout*, or *grayling*, to whoſe *proper* baits I refer you in my treatiſe of baits in this book.

Directions for the TOP-WATER ANGLING *with a worm.*

Your line in this caſe muſt be longer than your rod, without any plummet or float, drawing your bait

down and up the ſtream, in a clear day, with a gentle hand, that it may glide as if it were ſwimming, and your bait here muſt be a gilt-tail or brandling, keep it from the ſhore, and free from entanglement of weeds, woods, ruſhes, or other incumbrances that hinder ſport.

Farther directions for FLOAT-ANGLING.

Here your line muſt be two or three foot longer than your rod in rivers, but in ponds and pits ſomething ſhorter. Angling in clear water for *ſalmon-ſmelts*, *trout*, or *grayling*, you muſt put but one hair next the hook, but in muddy water, and for other fiſh, two or three, obſerving the running line and rod for the *tench*, and proportion this to it, lead it moderately, but ſo that it may keep the line ſtrait and even; but for *tench*, *carp*, *barbel*, or *chub*, your rod and line muſt have an additional ſtrength in the thickneſs of the one, and the number of hairs in the other; and your float manageable in the water, proportioned according to the ſwiftneſs or ſlowneſs of the water, but with one worm, the water being very clear; and obſerve for ſome ſort of fiſh, as *Flounders*, *ſalmon-ſmelts*, *bream*, and *gudgeon*, your bait muſt drag on the ground, but for other ſorts, as, *tench*, *roach*, *bleak*, *pike*, *ruff*, and *carp*, at mid-water; for *grayling* and *pearch*, at ſix or nine inches from the bottom. The *chub* is often taken at bottom, mid-water and top.

You may uſe the divers ſorts of baits, angling with a float, but ground baits are moſt frequently us'd, and with ſucceſs.

Directions for DRABLING.

By this, *barbels* of a large ſize are taken; to do it compleatly, obſerve theſe rules.

Have a ſtrong line of ſix yards, which before you faſten it to your rod, muſt be put through a piece of lead,

lead, that if the fiſh bite, it may ſlip too and fro, and that the water may ſomething move it on the ground; bait it with a pretty large lob-worm well ſcour'd, and ſo by its motion the *barbel* will be entic'd into the danger without ſuſpicion. The beſt places are in running water near piles, or under wooden bridges, ſupported with oaks floated and ſlimy.

Angling with the LEDGER-BAIT.

This is us'd for variety of exerciſe, to give reſt to the angler, and ſo differs from others that are called walking baits, and this is, when the bait continues to reſt in one fix'd and certain place.

Here you muſt take off your float, but let the lead remain, and within half a yard of the top of the line wrap a thin plate of lead, an inch and a half long, and pretty broad, *viz.* about an inch; ſo faſten your line to your rod, caſt in your bait either into a ſtill, ſlow draught, or gentle ſtream, and when it is at the bottom you may ſtick your *rod* in the bank of the river, or hold it in your hand at diſcretion, and by the bending of the rod, or motion of the lead at top, you will perceive when the fiſh bite: give her ſome time, and ſtrike contrary to where her head lies. The *chub* and *eel* are ſucceſsfully taken this way.

To lay NIGHT-HOOKS.

To do this effectually, procure a ſmall cord, which may be about ſixteen yards long, and to this, at equal diſtances, tie five or ſix fine twiſted flax or ſilk lines, about eighteen inches each, of the thickneſs of your trowling-line, faſten them ſo that they may be eaſily removed, and put on again; whip to the ends of each of them a pretty ſtrong hook, bait with a loach, minow, or bull-head, the fins and gills cut off; or, theſe being wanting, the ſeven eyes, *eel* brood, ſmall *roach*, *gudgeon*, the pith of an *ox* or *cow*'s back-bone, &c.

will ſerve for the fiſh, put the point at the hook in the tail, and out of the mouth, ſo that the fiſh's head may have a reſting in the hook's bent, and that the point may not be diſcovered, cover it with a worm, caſting the cord, by a weight, over the river, ſtream, or pond, faſten both ends to ſtakes on either ſide; and be there early in the morning, and expect *chub*, large *eels*, *trout*, or pike, but for a *pike* keep the *bait* with a *float* about a foot or ſomething more from the bottom.

For this, to gather the fiſh, you may bait the ground with blood and grains, or ſewet made up in ſweet earth, taken from under the green ſoard, or paſtes, *&c.*

Choice RECEIPTS *or rare* SECRETS, *never before made publick.*

Take oyl of amber, roſemary and myrrh, an equal quantity, infuſe in them any worms, or mingle paſte with them, and the fiſh, if near, will haſten to the bait ſo dipped, and then not have power to go away, till ſhe either nibbles off the bait, or is taken.

Ground-bait for *carp* with unprickled ſamphire bruiſed, and made into balls, with wallnut-oil. This likewiſe allures *tench* and *bream*.

Over-night mix bean-flower with a little honey, wet it with rectify'd ſpirits of wine, and a little oil of turpentine, make it up into little pellets, and ſuch fiſh as nibble it, when thrown in, will be ſtupified, ſo that in the morning coming to themſelves a little, they will bite very eagerly, as being, after their drunken fit, exceeding hungry. This likewiſe is a ſure detainer of them all night in the ſummer, and ſo that they will not wander from the place. *Nox vomica*, ſcraped into paſte, makes them drunk, and ſo that if the water be ſhallow, you may go in and take them when they riſe and turn on their bellies as if expiring, tho' in a little time

time they will come to themſelves again; if the water be deep, you may uſe a landing net.

I have ſet down theſe ointments, but do not recommend them. The induſtrious *angler* will find more pleaſure in catching them by neat angling, than any of theſe expenſive means.

A ſpecial WINTER-*bait to get and preſerve.*

When plowing begins in *Autumn*, before any froſts come that are forcible, to make entrance into the earth, obſerve where the ploughs are going, if there be ſtore of crows lighted on the ground, eſpecially in that which is heathy, ſandy, or greenland, follow, and you will find a white worm bigger than a gentle, having a red head, which is held to be bred of the ſpawn or egg of a beetle, left in thoſe holes ſhe digs in the ground under horſe or cow-dung, which, in *March* or *April*, turns to a beetle again: you may put about two quarts of theſe into about half a buſhel of the ſame mould: when you gather them, put them in a tub or other veſſel, where the froſt or wind may not come to kill them; and by this means, when moſt other baits are out, you may be provided all the ſeaſonable times in winter, and early in ſpring. They take in thoſe ſeaſons, *bream*, *carp*, *roach*, *dace*, and *chub*.

Gentles may be kept in winter, in bran, moſs and ſcouring earth, lightly over ſome putrefaction. in which at the firſt laying them in the ground, where the froſt cannot come at them, you perceive they begin to live.

Unſeaſonable Times to ANGLE *in.*

Having ſpoke much of proper times to accommodate the angler, I ſhall now ſpeak ſomething more of unſeaſonable ones, that thoſe who are ignorant in this art, as to the niceties of it, may not loſe their labour.

The

The two extreams of weather are not proper, *viz.* (1.) When great droughts have parch'd the earth, ſo that the rivers carry but low currents when the weather is exceſſive hot, in the heat of the day, unleſs clouds cover all, and winds gently breathe. (2.) In froſty or ſnowy weather, or unhealthy weather, for two reaſons, *viz.* becauſe you will little damage the fiſh, but greatly injure yourſelf.

In the morning, either in the ſpring or advancing of the ſeaſon, if a hoary froſt happen, the fiſh will be backward in biting that day, and little ſport can be expected, for they will not freely riſe, except in the evening; and ſoon after they have ſpawn'd they will not bite to the purpoſe, till with graſs and weeds they have well purged and ſcowered themſelves, ſo that they may by that means recover their ſtrength and appetite.

'Tis not proper to fiſh when the north or eaſt winds are ſharp.

In brooks that are ſmall and clear, where the water is kept up by mills or dams, it is not good angling, for there eſpecially the *trout* keeps her hole, and others bite faintly.

Some other uſeful OBSERVATIONS *and* DIRECTIONS.

Be ſure always to keep your ſhadow off the water, and therefore let the ſun be in your face, or on one ſide of you when you angle, keeping out of ſight and making no noiſe; and when you are bent for *trout*, you need make but three or four eſſays with the ground bait or fly; for if it comes not then to bite or offer, either there's not any there, or they keep cloſe in their holes.

To catch FISH.

Take nettles, cinquefoin, and chop ſmall, then mix ſome juice of houſleek with it, rub your hands therewith,

with, and throw it into the water, and keep your hands in the water, and the fiſh will come to them, that you may take them: or, take heart-wort and lime, mingle 'em together, and throw it into a ſtanding water, and it will fox them, that you may take them with your hands.

To take a PIKE *as he lies ſleeping and ſunning in fair weather, with a loop or net.*

March and *Auguſt* the beſt times. Take a long pole of rod that is light and ſtrait, on the ſmall end faſten a running loop of twiſted horſe-hair and ſilk, of a large compaſs, which gently draw on him when it is five or ſix inches over his gills, hoiſt him up, if 'tis a ſmall *pike*, draw it not ſo far on, and make no noiſe in walking or ſpeaking: if he lies ſo that you cannot conveniently nooſe him, touch his tail with the rod, and he'll turn as you pleaſe, alſo with a hand net, putting it gently under water, guide it juſt under him, and lift it ſoftly till you juſt touch him, and then do it as quick as you can.

To invite FISH.

If you take *cocculus Indicus*, and make little balls of it with cummin, old cheeſe, wheat-flower, and wine, (let the balls be no bigger than peaſe) and throw them into a ſtanding water or calm places where fiſh are, all that taſte of it will be preſently ſtupify'd, ſwimming to the ſhore as if they were drunk, ſo that you may take 'em with your hand.

To make and order FISH-PONDS.

Mooriſh ground, and ſuch as is full of ſprings is beſt, the firſt breeds them well, the laſt prevents their being ſtoln; next, let your pond be ſo ordered, that it may *receive* the rain-water that falls from the hills, for that mightily refreſhes 'em; and if your pond can receive

receive the piſs of horſes, and other cattle, they'll *produce* the largeſt and fatteſt fiſh. Let your pond's head be at the loweſt part of the ground, and let the floodgate have a quick and ſwift fall, that when you go to empty it, you may not be too long about it: in building your pond, the beſt way is to drive a row of ſtakes of 6 or 7 foot long, and 6 or 7 inches ſquare, and at 4 foot diſtance; elm is better than oak, drive them in the length of the pond's head, and ram the firſt row four foot and a half deep, then they'll be ſtrong. Next, dig your pond and throw the earth among the ſtakes and piles; when they are covered well, drive another row over them, and ram the earth in the void places, that it lie cloſe and keep the water in the better; and thus you muſt continue ſtake on ſtake, ramming the earth till the head be as high as you would have it.

Let the inſide of the dam be ſmooth, that no current may have *power* over it; let *your pond* carry ſix foot water, and be eight foot deep, to receive the rains that fall into it: floor the bottom with large turfs of flot-graſs, cloſe join'd and ſtak'd down; ſtake alſo on the pond-ſide ſeveral faggots of light wood, but not oak, for that's bitter and offenſive: theſe faggots ſhelter the fiſh, and after they caſt their ſpawn preſerve from vermin, and preſerve the young fiſh from devourers; let them alſo have ſome retiring places by roots of trees, hollow banks, both to cheriſh them in cold and heat, and *preſerve* from danger *carp*, *tench*, and *bream* ſtore by themſelves: *pearch* and *pike* by themſelves: put into it either *minows* or *dace*, but *roach* are injurious to all ponds and great breeders. Ponds with ſtrong ſandy bottoms, that lie warm and out of the wind, with nut-trees and willows alſo ſheltered, are the beſt for carp to breed in, and new made ponds breed better than old, that are full of weeds and mud, therefore every three years cleanſe them from

from the mud filth. To make a ſtore pond, ſow it; put in all *ſpawners*, or all *millers*; obſerve, that ſtore ponds afford the largeſt and fatteſt *carp*. In a breeding pond *put* three *ſpawners* to one *miller*. Draw your *pond* about *Allhollontide*, and keep of females a ſufficient number for breeding. Indeed, you ought not to kill *any* of 'em, *they'll* live and breed 50 or 60 years; but you may kill *all* the males that are above three *years* old, and put the reſt, that are three, two, or one year old into the pond again, as many of 'em as the *pond* will maintain: this do once every year.

Mr. *Worlidge* ſays, that dead, heavy, and more groſs waters are moſt proper for *carp*, *tench*, *bream*, &c. but eſpecially *carp*, and thoſe ponds that are neareſt the ſea, and whoſe water is a little blackiſh, yield the beſt and fatteſt *carp*; and, that if you caſt into your fiſh-ponds, thro' *which* there is but little current, ſometimes a load of the refuſe ſalt earth, that as the ſaltneſs is caſt out, and ſo of no value, it improves them as ſalt does *pigeons*; and that *trout-ponds* being made at the head of a chalky *ſpring*, that they may feed at the very *atoms* of chalk that iſſues out of *rocks* with the *water*, are a great improvement to theſe fiſh: Some, *ſays he*, feed them with fleſh, *&c.* but 'tis not ſo good as their natural food.

Feed your *pike*, *carp*, and other fiſh. with bread, grains, chippings of bread, entrails of chickens, *&c.*

If you would have *carp* large in *April*, the water then growing low, cleanſe the ſides, where the water is fal'n away, with a rake; and then ſow *hay-ſeed* round about, and rub it in well, and about *September* the graſs will grow, and the water overflow it, and they feeding thereon, ſpeedily become fat *carp*, of a delicious taſte.

Obſervations. Female *carp* are eight or nine years e'er they breed *much*, therefore 'tis *requiſite* you ſhould get ſome

ſome of that age, to have *ſpeedy* advantage by them, you ought to have 2 or 3, leſt one ſhould die, the male ought to be 4 years old; put into each female 14 males. A pond of half an acre will feed yearly 400 *carp*. To make them *very* fat and large, not only hay-ſeed, &c. as is already ſaid, but if you take 'em out of the pond, and put them into *pits* or *puddles* in paſtures, or deep ditches in meadows, they'll ſpeedily grow very large. 'Tis ſaid, *carp* never feeds but in the ſummer-ſeaſon, and, that a deep pond of 12 foot ſquare, that lies *warm* will yield 600 *carp*.

Another ſays, that putrified and ſtinking water injures fiſh the worſt of any thing, therefore cleanſe your *ponds* every 3 years at leaſt, of wood, ſedges, and filth. In clay countries, *ponds* are are ſubject to mud, therefore once in 7 years drain them in the beginning of the ſpring; put the fiſh you preſerve into ſmaller *pits* or *ſtews*, the other uſe as you pleaſe: then cauſing *men* to *tread* the *mud* with *their feet*, the *eels* will riſe out, then take them, afterwards let the *men* throw out the *mud*, and fill it, which is good compoſt for *land*; then then ſod the bottom and ſides of the *pond* with *green ſods*, and fix 'em hard in with ſtakes of *ſallow*; theſe ſides will nouriſh the fiſh exceedingly.

This done, if there is no freſh ſpring in the *pond*, then lade the water back again into it, then drawing your ſluices, take out your ſtore of fiſh, and put them again into your *pond*, and obſerve that there be two parts ſpawners, and a third millers. Theſe pits and ſmall ſtews are beſt for feeding; therefore always keep them with freſh water, and plac'd ſo one by another, that you may empty them when you pleaſe; once in three months put freſh ſods on the banks and bottoms, of the fruitfulleſt graſs: you ſhall put into them ſtore of *roach*, *dace*, *minows*, *loach*, and *millers-thumb*, for the bigger *fiſh* to *feed* thereon, alſo *garbage*, and the *blood* of ſheep, calves, hogs, and the like, will fat fiſh ſpeedily;

ſpeedily; for as *fiſh* in *rivers* have ſomething brought them to feed on, ſo thoſe impriſon'd in *ponds*, and want that help muſt be reliev'd, or periſh: Feed them alſo with grains, curds chipings of bread, and any ſort of grain, thrown into the ponds morning and evening.

Of BUCK HUNTING.

HAVING under the article hart (which ſee) treated ſo largely, as to their nature, and the ways of hunting them, there needs the leſs to be ſaid as to *hunting the buck*, and the rules for taking him: for he that can hunt a *hart* or *ſtag* well, will not hunt a *buck* ill.

Beſides, *fallow deer* being common among us, and thoſe uſually in parks and encloſures of divers ſituations and ſtatures, different from one another; it would be a difficult taſk to give inſtructions for every particular.

And indeed it is the proper buſineſs of every keeper of parks, &c. to underſtand the nature and craft of his deer in hunting; all are to be acquired by experience more than reading; however I ſhall briefly inform you of what relates to *buck hunting* as now practiſed.

There is no ſuch ſkill and art required in lodging a buck, as in harbouring a *hart* or *ſtag*, nor ſo much drawing after, but you may judge by the view, and obſerve what grove or coppice he enters; for a *buck* does not wander up and down as the hart, nor change his layer ſo often, neither uſe ſo many croſſings, doublings, ſhifts, and devices, nor doth he flee ſo far before the *hounds*, but avoids the highway and open places, as much as he can; he is not ſo crafty or ſo ſtrong to beat a river, or to ſtay ſo long at ſoil; neither is he ſo free to take a great river, nor muſt it be deep;

but

but being cloſe hunted, he will flee into ſuch ſtrong coverts as he is accuſtomed to, and it has been obſerved, that ſome bucks that have leaped over a park pale, after a ring or two, have returned of themſelves, chuſing rather to die where they have been acquainted, than in a ſtrange place.

The buck *groans* and *trots* as the hart *belleth*, and with a worſe noiſe and rattling in the throat, leaps lighter at the rut than the *ſtag*; neither will theſe two beaſts come near one another's layer, and they have ſeldom or never any other relays than the old hounds.

They alſo herd more than the *hart* does, and lie in the drieſt places, though if they are at large they herd but little from *May* to *Auguſt*.

Now the greateſt ſubtlety a huntſman needs to uſe in hunting the *buck*, is to have a care of hunting counting or change, becauſe of the plenty of *fallow deer* that uſe to come more directly upon the hounds than the red deer does.

The does begin to fawn about the end of *May*, and continue till *Midſummer*.

The bucks mew or ſhed their horns or heads every year about, or in, *April*, and part of *May*, and their new ones are burniſht about the end of *Auguſt*.

The buck makes his *Fewmiſhing* in divers manners and forms as the *hart*, according to the diverſity of food, and the time of the day, morning and evening; but they are moſt commonly round.

The buck comes in ſeaſon the eighth of *July*, and goes out at *holy rood*, which is the fourteenth of *September*.

The *doe* comes in ſeaſon when the buck goes out, and goes out at Twelfth-tide.

In buck hunting the ſame hounds are uſed as in running the *ſtag*. In foreſts and chaces as they lie at *layer*, ſo they are hunted.

In parks where they are incloſed, the ſport is not ſo diverting

diverting by reaſon of the greater change and ſoil, unleſs they break out and run the country, which they ſeldom do.

But deer that lie out though near the park, make for the generality better chaces than foreſt deer.

The keeper ſhooting a BUCK *to be run down.*

In order to facilitate the chaſe, the keeper commonly ſelects a fat buck out of the herd, which he ſhoots to maim him, and then he is run down by the hounds.

As to the method of hunting the *buck*; the company generally go out very early for the benefit of the morning, ſometimes they have a deer ready lodged, if not, the coverts are drawn till one is rowzed; or ſometimes in a park a deer is pitched upon, and forced from the herd, then more hounds are laid on to run the chace, if you come to be at a fault, the old ſtaunch hounds are only to be relied upon till you recover him again: if he be ſunk and the hounds thruſt him up, it is called an *imprime*, and the company all ſound a *recheat*; when he is run down, every one ſtrives to get in to prevent his being torn by the hounds.

Fallow deer ſeldom or never ſtanding at bay.

He that firſt gets in, cries hoo-up, to give notice that he is down and blows a death. When the company are all come in they paunch him and reward the *hounds*; and generally the chief perſon of quality amongſt them *takes ſay*, that is cuts his belly open, to ſee how fat he is.

When this is done, every one has a chop at his neck, and the head being cut off is ſhewed to the *hounds* to encourage them to run only at male deer, which they ſee by the horns, and to teach them to bite only at the head: then the company all ſtanding in a ring, one blows a ſingle death, which being done all blow a double *recheat*, and ſo conclude the chace with a general halloo of hoo-up, and depart the field to their ſeveral

veral homes, or to the place of meeting; and the huntſman, or ſome other, hath the deer caſt croſs the buttocks of his horſe, and ſo carries him home.

Of HARTS.

A HART is the moſt noble and ſtately beaſt, and in the firſt year is called a *hind calf*, in the ſecond a *knobber*, in the third a *brock*, in the fourth a *ſtaggard*, in the fifth a *ſtag*, and in the ſixth a *hart*.

Harts are bred in moſt countries, but the ancients prefer thoſe of *Britain* before all others, where they are of divers colours.

Theſe excel all others in the beauty of their horns, which are very high, yet do not grow to their bones or ſcalps, but to their ſkins, branching forth into many ſpears, being ſolid throughout, and as hard as ſtones, and fall off once a year.

But if they remain abroad in the air; and if they are by that means ſometimes wet and ſometimes dry, they grow as light as any other leſs ſolid ſubſtance; by which it ſhould ſeem they are of an earthy ſubſtance, concrete, and hardened with a ſtrong heat, made like unto bones.

They loſe their horns every year in the ſpring.

At one year old they have nothing but bunches, that are ſmall ſignificators of horns to come: at two years they appear more perfectly, but ſtrait and ſingle: at three years they grow into two ſpears; at four into three, and ſo increaſe every year in their branches till they are ſix; and above that time their age is not certainly to be known by the head.

Having loſt their horns, in the day-time they hide themſelves, inhabiting the ſhades, to avoide the annoyance of flies, and feed, during that time, only in the night.

Their

Their new horns come out at firſt like bunches, and afterwards (as has been ſaid before) by the increaſe of the ſun's heat they grow more hard, covered with a rough ſkin, which is called a *velvet head*; and as that ſkin drieth, they daily try the ſtrength of their new heads upon trees, which not only ſcrapeth off the roughneſs, but by the pain they feel thus rubbing them, they are taught how long to forbear the company of their fellows; for at laſt, when in their chafing and fretting of their new horns againſt the trees, they can feel no longer pain and ſmart in them, they ſeem as if they thought it were high time to forſake their ſolitary dwellings and return again to their former condition.

The reaſon why *harts* and *deers* ſhed their horns annually are theſe:

Firſt, becauſe of the matter of which they conſiſt; for it is dry and earthy like the ſubſtance of green leaves, which alſo fall annually; likewiſe wanting glewy or holding moiſture, for which reaſon the horn of a *hart* cannot be bent.

Secondly, from the place they grow upon, for they are not rooted upon the ſkull, but only within the ſkin.

Thirdly, from the efficient cauſe; for they are hardened both with the heat of ſummer and cold of winter; by means of which the pores which ſhould receive the nouriſhing liquor are ſhut up and ſtopped, ſo that their native heat neceſſarily dieth; which does not ſo happen in other beaſts, whoſe horns are for the moſt part hollow and fitted for longer continuance; but theſe are of leſſer, and the new bunches ſwelling up, towards the ſpring, do thruſt off the old horns, having the aſſiſtance of boughs or trees, weight of the horns, or by the willing excurſion of the beaſt that beareth them.

It has been obſerved, that when a *hart* pricketh up his ears, he windeth ſharp, very far and ſure, and diſcovereth

covereth all treachery againſt him; but if they hang down and wag, he perceives no danger.

Their age is diſcerned by their teeth; they have four on both ſides, with which they grind their meat; beſides two others, which are much larger in the male than in the female.

All theſe beaſts have worms in their heads, underneath their tongues, in a hollow place where the neck-bone is joined to the head, which are no bigger than fly-blows.

The blood of the *hart* is not like that of other beaſts, for it hath no fibres in it, and therefore it is hardly congealed.

His heart is very great, and ſo are all thoſe of fearful beaſts, having in it a bone like a croſs.

He hath no gall, and that is one of the cauſes of his long life, and therefore are his bowels ſo bitter, that the dogs will not touch them unleſs they be very fat.

The genital part of a *hart* is all nervous, the tail ſmall, and a hind hath udders between her thighs, with four ſpeans like a Cow.

Theſe are above all other beaſts both ingenious and fearful, who although they have large horns, yet their defence againſt other four-footed beaſts, is to run away.

The *hart* is ſtrangely amazed, when he hears any one call or whiſtle in his fiſt: for trial of which, ſome ſeeing a *hart* in the plain in motion, have called after him, crying, *ware*, *ware*, *take heed*; and thereupon have ſeen him inſtantly turn back, making ſome little ſtand.

He hears very perfectly when his head and ears are erected; but imperfectly when he lets them down.

When he is on foot, and not afraid, he admires every thing he ſees, and takes a pleaſure to gaze at them.

A *hart* can naturally ſwim a great way, inſomuch that

that ſome which have been hunted in foreſts near the ſea, have plunged into it, and have been killed by fiſhermen twelve miles from land.

It is reported of them, that when they go to rut, and for that purpoſe are obliged to croſs ſome great river or arm of the ſea, they aſſemble in great herds, the ſtrongeſt going in firſt, and the next in ſtrength following him, and ſo one after the other, relieving themſelves by ſtaying their heads on the buttocks of each other.

The *hind* commonly carries her calf eight or nine months, which uſually falls in *May*, altho' ſome of them have two at once, and eat up the ſkin wherein the calf did lie.

As the calf grows up, ſhe teaches it to run, leap, the way it muſt take to defend itſelf from the hounds.

Harts and *hinds* are very long lived, living commonly an hundred years and upwards.

Of HART-HUNTING.

Geſner, ſpeaking of the hunting of the *hart*, ſays as follows, *This wild, deceitful, and ſubtile beaſt, by windings and turnings, does often deceive it's hunter, as the harts of* Meandros *flying from the terrible cry of* Diana's *hounds*: Wherefore the prudent hunter muſt frame his dogs, as *Pythagoras* did his ſcholars, with words of art to ſet them on, and take them off again at his pleaſure.

Wherefore he muſt firſt of all encompaſs in the beaſt in her own layer, and ſo unharbour her in the view of the dogs, that ſo they may never loſe her ſlot or footing.

Neither muſt he ſet upon every one, either of the herd, or thoſe that wander ſolitary alone, or a little one, but partly by ſight, and partly by their footing and fumets, make a judgment of the game, and alſo obſerve the largeneſs of his layer.

The huntſman, having made theſe diſcoveries in order

order to the chace, takes off the couplings of the dogs, and ſome on horſeback, and others on foot, follow the cry, with the greateſt art, obſervation, and ſpeed, remembring and intercepting him in his ſubtile turnings and headlings; with all agility leaping hedges, gates, pales, ditches; neither fearing thorns, down hills nor woods, but mounting freſh horſe, if the firſt tire; follow the largeſt head of the whole herd, which muſt be ſingled out of the chace; which the dogs perceiving, muſt follow; not following any other.

The dogs are animated to the ſport by the winding of horns, and the voices of the huntſmen.

But ſometimes the crafty beaſt ſends forth his little ſquire to be ſacrificed the dogs and hunters, inſtead of himſelf, lying cloſe the mean time. In this caſe, the huntſman muſt ſound a retreat, break off the dogs, and take them in, that is, leam them again, until they be brought to the fairer game; which riſeth with fear, yet ſtill ſtriveth by flight, until he be wearied and breathleſs.

The Nobles call the beaſt a *wiſe hart*, who, to avoid all his enemies, runneth into the greateſt herds, and ſo brings a cloud of error on the dogs, to obſtruct their farther purſuit; ſometimes alſo beating ſome of the herd upon his footings, that ſo he may more eaſily eſcape, by amuſing the dogs.

Afterwards he betakes himſelf to his heels again, ſtill running with the wind, not only for the ſake of refreſhment, but alſo becauſe by that means he can the more eaſily hear the voice of his purſuers, whether they be far from him, or near to him.

But at laſt being diſcovered by the hunters, and ſagatious ſcent of the dogs, he flies into the herds of cattle, as cows, ſheep, *&c.* leaping on a cow or ox, laying the fore parts of his body thereon, that ſo touching the earth only with his hinder feet, he may leave a very

a very ſmall or no ſcent at all behind for the hounds to diſcern.

A chief huntſman to *Lewis* XII. of *France*, affirms, That on a time, they having a *hart* in chace, on a ſudden the hounds were at a fault, ſo as the game was out of ſight, and not a dog would once ſtir his foot, at which the hunters were all amazed; at laſt, by caſting their eyes about, they diſcovered the fraud of the crafty beaſt.

There was a great white-thorn, which grew in a ſhadowy place, as high as a moderate tree, which was encompaſſed about with other ſmaller ſhrubs; into this the *hart* having leaped, ſtood there a-loft, the boughs ſpreading from one to another, and there remain'd till he was thruſt through by the huntſman, rather than he would yield himſelf up a prey to the hounds his mortal enemies.

But their uſual manner is, when they ſee themſelves hard beſet, and every way intercepted, to make force at their enemy with their horns, who firſt comes upon him, unleſs they be prevented by ſpear or ſword.

When the beaſt is ſlain, the huntſman with his horn windeth the fall of the beaſt, and then the whole company comes up, blowing their horns in triumph for ſuch a conqueſt; among whom, the ſkilfulleſt opens the beaſt, rewards the hounds with what properly belongs to them, for their future encouragement: for which purpoſe the huntſmen dip bread in the ſkin and blood of the beaſt to give to the hounds.

Of the rut of HARTS.

Their rutting-time is about the middle of *September*, and continues two months: the older they are the hotter, and the better they pleaſe the *hinds*, and therefore they go to rut before the young ones; and being very fiery, they will not ſuffer any of them to come

near the *hinds*, till they have ſatisfied their venereal appetite.

But for all this, the young ones are even with the old, for when they perceive that the old are grown weak by exceſs of rutting, the young will frequently attack them, and make them quit the place, that they may be maſters of the ſport.

They may be eaſily killed in rutting-time, for they follow the ſcent of the *hinds* with ſo much eagerneſs, laying their noſes to the ground, that they mind that only, and nothing elſe.

It is dangerous for any man to come near them at that time, for then they will make at any living creature of a different kind.

In ſome places their luſt ariſes in *October*, and alſo in *May*; and then, whereas at other times the males live apart from the ſemales, they go about like laſcivious lovers, ſeeking the company of the females.

The males, in their raging luſt, make a peculiar noiſe.

One male will cover many females, continuing in this appetite for one or two months.

The females ſeem chaſt, and unwilling to admit of copulation, by reaſon of the rigour of the *genital* of the male; and therefore they ſink down on their buttocks, when they begin to feel his *ſemen*, as it has been obſerved in tame *harts*; and if they can, the females run away, the males ſtriving to hold them back with their fore-feet.

It cannot be well ſaid, that they are covered ſtanding, lying, or going, but rather running; for ſo are they filled with greateſt ſeverity.

When one month or ſix weeks is over of their rutting, they grow much tamer; and laying aſide all fierceneſs, they return to their ſolitary places, digging every one by himſelf a ſeveral hole or ditch, in which they lie, to aſſwage the ſtrong ſavour of their luſt; for they

they ſtink like goats, and their face begins to look blacker than at other times: and in thoſe places they live till ſome ſhowers of rain fall; after which they return to the paſture again, living in flocks as they did before.

The females having been thus filled, never aſſociate again with the male till ſhe is delivered of her burthen, which is in about eight months, and produces generally but one at a time, very ſeldom two; which ſhe lodges cunningly in ſome covert. If ſhe perceive them ſtubborn and wild, ſhe will beat them with her feet till they lie cloſe and quiet.

She oftentimes leadeth forth her young, teaching it to run, and leap over buſhes, ſtones, and ſmall ſhrubs, and ſo continueth all the ſummer long, while their own ſtrength is the moſt conſiderable.

It is very pleaſant to obſerve them, when they go out to rut, and make their vault; for when they ſmell the hind, they raiſe their noſe up into the air; and if it be a great *hart*, he will turn his head and look about to ſee whether there be none near him to interrupt and ſpoil his ſport.

Upon this, the young fly away for fear; but if there be any of equal bigneſs, they then ſtrive which ſhall vault firſt; and in the oppoſing each other, they ſcrape the ground with their feet, ſhocking and butting each other ſo furiouſly, that you may hear the noiſe they make with their horns, a good half mile, ſo long till one of them is the conqueror.

The *hind* beholding this encounter, never ſtirs from her ſtation, expecting, as it were, the vaulting of him who ſhall get the maſtery, who having got it, bellows, and then inſtantly covers her.

Of the coats and colours of HARTS.

The coats of *harts* are of three different ſorts, *brown*, *red*, and *fallow*; and of each of theſe coats

there proceeds two ſorts of harts, the one great and the other ſmall.

Of *brown harts*, there are ſome great, long, and hairy, bearing a high head, of a red colour, and well beamed, who will ſtand before hounds very long, being longer of breath, and ſwifter of foot than thoſe of a ſhorter ſtature.

There are another ſort of brown *harts*, which are little, ſhort, and well ſet, bearing commonly a black mane, and are fatter and better veniſon than the former, by reaſon of their better feeding in young coppices.

They are very crafty, eſpecially when in greaſe, and will be hardly found, becauſe they know they are then moſt enquired after; beſides, they are ſenſible they cannot then ſtand long before the hounds.

If they be old, and feed on good ground, then are their heads black, fair, and well branched, and commonly palmed at the top.

The *fallow harts* bear their heads high, and of a whitiſh colour, their beams ſmall, their antlers long, ſlender, and ill grown; having neither heart, courage nor force.

But thoſe which are of a lively *red fallow*, having a black or brown liſt down the ridge of the back, are ſtrong, bearing fair and high heads, well furniſhed and beamed.

Of the heads and branches of HARTS.

As there are ſeveral ſorts of *harts*, ſo alſo have they different heads, according to their age, country, reſt, and feeding.

Here you muſt take notice, that they bear not their firſt head (which we call *broches*, and in a fallow deer *pricks*) until they enter the ſecond year of their age.

In the third year they bear four, ſix, or eight, ſmall branches: at the fourth, they bear eight or ten: at the

the fifth, ten or twelve: at ſix, fourteen or ſixteen: and at the ſeventh year, they bear their heads beamed, branched and ſummed, with as much as ever they will bear, and do never multiply but in greatneſs only.

The time of HARTS *mewing or caſting their head.*

An old *hart* caſteth his head ſooner than the young, and the time is about the months of *February* and *March*.

Here *note*, that if you geld a *hart* before he hath a head, he will never bear any; and if you geld him when he has a head, he will never after mew and caſt it: and ſo if he be gelded when he hath a velvet head, it will ever be ſo, without fraying or burniſhing.

As ſoon as they have caſt their heads, they inſtantly withdraw into the thickets, hiding themſelves in ſuch convenient places where they can have good water and ſtrong feeding, near ſome ground where wheat and peaſe are ſown: but young harts do never betake themſelves to the thickets till they have born their third head, which is in the fourth year.

After they have mewed, they will begin to button in *March* and *April*; and as the ſun grows ſtrong, and the ſeaſon of the year puts forward the crop of the earth, ſo will their heads increaſe in all reſpects; ſo that by the middle of *June*, their heads will be ſummed as much as they will bear all the year.

The names and diverſity of Heads, according to the terms uſed by Hunters.

The part which bears the *antlers*, *royals*, and *tops*, is called the *beam*, and the little ſtreaks therein are called *gutters*.

That which is about the cruſt of the *beam* is termed *pearls*, and that which is about the bur itſelf, formed

like little *pearls*, is called, *pearls bigger than the reſt*.

The bur is next the head, and that which is about the bur is called *pearls*; the firſt is called *antler*, the ſecond *ſur-antler*: all the reſt which grow afterwards, until you come to the crown, palm, or croche, are called *royals*, and *ſur-royals*; the little buds or broches about the top, are called *croches*.

Their *heads* alſo go by ſeveral names; the *firſt* head is called a *crowned top*, becauſe the croches are ranged in form of a crown.

The *ſecond* is called a *palmed top*, becauſe the croches are formed like a man's hand.

Thirdly, all heads which bear not above three or four, the croches being placed aloft, all of one height, in form of a cluſter of nuts, are to be called heads of ſo many *croches*.

Fourthly, all heads which bear two in top, or having their croches doubling, are to be called *forked heads*.

Fifthly, all heads which have double burs, or the *antlers*, *royals*, and *croches*, turned downwards, contrary to other heads, are only called *heads*.

How to know an old HART *by the ſlot, entries, abatures, foils, ſewmets, gate and walks, fraying-ſtocks, head, and branches.*

Firſt, by the *Slot*. You muſt take good notice of the treading of the *hart*'s foot; if you find the treading of two, the one long and the other round, yet both of one bigneſs, yet the long *ſlot* will indicate the *hart* to be much larger than the round.

And beſides, the old *hart*'s hind-foot doth never over-reach the fore-foot; that of the young ones do.

But above all take this obſervation: When you have found the *ſlot* of a *hart* in the wood, take notice what manner of footing it is, whether worn or ſharp; and accord-

accordingly obſerve the country, and judge by that whether either may be occaſioned thereby.

For *harts* bred in mountains and ſtony countries, have their toes and ſides of their feet worn, by means of their continual climbing and reſting themſelves thereon, and not on the heel; whereas in other places they ſtay themſelves more on the heel than toes, for in ſoft or ſandy ground they ſlip upon the heel, by reaſon of their weight; and thus by frequent ſtaying themſelves thereon, it makes the heel grow broader and bigger.

And thus may the age of a *hart* be known by his *ſlot* or treading.

The next thing to be conſidered is the *Fewmets*; and this is to be judged in *April* and *May*. If the *fewmets* or fewmiſhing be large and thick, they intimate that the *hart* is old.

In the months of *June* and *July*, they make their *fewmets* in large croteys, very ſoft; and from that time to the end of *Auguſt*, they make them large, long, knotty and anointed, and gilded, letting them fall but few and ſcattered.

In *September* and *October*, there is no longer paſſing a judgment by them, by reaſon of the rut.

Thirdly, in order to know the height and thickneſs of a *hart*, obſerve his entries and galleries into the thickets, and what boughs he has over-ſtridden, and mark from thence the height of his belly from the ground.

By the height of the entries, a judgment is made of the age of a *hart*; for a young deer is ſuch as uſually creeps, but the old ones are ſtiff and ſtately.

His largeneſs may be known by the height of his creeping as he paſſes to his harbour, the young deer creeping low, which the old will not ſtoop to.

Fourthly, take notice of his *gait*, by which you may know whether the *hart* be great and long, and whe-

ther he will ſtand long before the hounds or not; for all *harts* which have a long ſtep will ſtand up a long while, being ſwift, light, and well breathed; but if he leave a great ſlot, which is the ſign of an old deer, he will never ſtand long when he is chaſed.

Laſtly, take notice of his *fraying-poſt*; where take notice, that by how much the *hart* is the older, the ſooner he goes to fray, and the larger is the tree he chuſes to fray againſt, and one ſo ſtrong that he cannot bend with his head.

All ſtags as they are furniſhed, beat their heads dry againſt ſome tree or other, which is called their *fraying-poſt*; the younger deer do it againſt weaker, leſſer, and lower trees; ſo that accordingly hunters judge confidently of their age, and of the nearneſs of their harbour, for that is the laſt action or ceremony they uſe before they enter it.

As to the *head* and *branches*, a *hart* is old; *Firſt*, when the compaſs of the bur is large, great, and well pearled.

Secondly, when the beam is large burthened and well pearled, being ſtrait, and not rendered crooked by antlers.

Thirdly, when the gutters in it are large and deep.

Fourthly, when the firſt antler, called *anteiller*, is large, long, and near to the bur, the ſur-antler near to the antler; and they ought to be both well pearled.

Fifthly, the reſt of the branches which are higher, being well ordered and ſet, and well grown, according to the largeneſs and proportion of the head; and the croches, palm, or crown, being great and large too, according to the largeneſs of the beam, are ſigns of an old *hart*.

How

How to ſeek a HART *in his haunts and feeding-places, according to the ſeaſons of the year.*

All *harts* change their manner of feeding every month; and foraſmuch as *November* is the concluſion of their rutting-time, I ſhall begin with that: in this they feed in heaths and broomy places.

In *December* they herd together, and withdraw themſelves into the ſtrengths of the foreſts, to ſhelter themſelves from the cold winds, ſnows, and froſts, and feed on the holm trees, elder trees, brambles, and whatſoever green thing they can find; and if it ſnow, they will ſkin or peel the trees like a goat.

In *January*, *February*, and *March*, they leave herding, but will keep four or five in company, and in the corners of the foreſt will feed on the winter-paſture, ſometimes making their incurſions into the neighbouring corn-fields, if they can perceive the blades of wheat, rye, or the like, appear above ground.

In *April* and *May*, they reſt in their thickets and other buſhy and ſhady places, during that ſeaſon, and ſtir very little till rutting-time, unleſs they are diſturbed.

There are ſome *harts* ſo cunning, that they will have two ſeveral layers to harbour in, a good diſtance one from the other, and will frequently change (for their greater ſecurity) from the one to the other, taking ſtill the benefit of the wind.

In theſe months they go not to the ſoil, by reaſon of the moiſture of the ſpring, and the dew that continually over-ſpreads the graſs.

In *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, they are in the pride of their greaſe, and do reſort to ſpring-coppices and corn-fields, only they ſeldom go where rye or barley grows.

In *September* and *October* they leave their thickets and go to the rut, during which ſeaſon they have no certain place either for food or harbour.

After what manner a Huntſman ſhould go drawing in the ſprings.

He ought not to come too early in the ſprings or hewts where he thinks the *hart* feedeth, and is at relief, for they uſually go to their layers in the ſprings; and if they be old, crafty deer, they will return to the border of the coppice, and there liſten whether they can hear any approaching danger, and if they once chance to vent the Huntſman or the hound, they will inſtantly diſlodge.

Now is the Huntſman's proper time; let him beat the outſides of the ſprings or thickets, if he find the track of a *hart* or *deer*, he ought to obſerve whether it be freſh, which may be known by the following tokens; the dew will be beaten off, the ſoil freſh, or the ground broken, or printed with other tokens; ſo he may judge his game lately went that way.

Having found his ſlot or treading, and the hound ſticking well upon it, let him hold him ſhort; for he ſhall draw better being ſo held, than if he were let at length of the leam; and thus let him draw till he is come to the covert, if poſſible, taking notice, by the way, of the ſlot, falls, entries, and the like, till he hath harboured him.

Having done this, let him plaſh down ſmall twigs, ſome above and ſome below, as he ſhall think fit; and then while the hound is hot, let him beat the outſides and make ring-walks twice or thrice about the wood, one while by the great and open ways, that he may help himſelf by the eye; another while through the thickets and coverts, for fear leſt his hounds ſhould overſhoot it, having ſtill better ſcent in the coverts than highways.

If he is in doubt whether the *hart* is gone out of the ring-walks, or fears he has drawn amiſs, then let him

go

go to the marks that he plushed, and draw counter, till he may take up the fewmet.

Directions for harbouring a STAG.

The Harbourer having taught his hound to draw mute always round the outside of the covert, as soon as his hound challenges, which he knows by his eager flourishing and straining his leam, he then is to seek for his slot; if he finds the heel thick, and the toe spreading broad, these are signs that it is an old deer, especially if it is fringed, that is broken on both the sides.

And if the ground be too hard to make any judgment from the slot, he must draw into the covert as he passes, observing the size of the entries; the larger and higher, the older the deer: as also his croppings of the tenders as he passes, the younger the deer the lower, the older the deer the higher are the branches.

He ought also to observe his fewmishings as he passes, the largeness of which bespeaks the largeness of the deer: He must also be curious in observing the fraying-post, which is usually the last opportunity he has to judge by; the eldest deer fraying highest, against the largest trees, and that being found, it may be concluded his harbour is not far off.

Therefore he ought to draw with more circumspection, checking the drawing-hound to secure him from spending when he comes so near as to have the deer in the wind, which when you have discovered by his eagerness that draws him, let him retire some distance back, and round the place with the hound, first at a considerable distance, and then if he finds him not disturbed, let him make a second round within that; and this will not only secure you that he is in the harbour, but will also secure his continuance there; for he will not (except he be forced) pass that taint your hound left in the rounding of him.

So

So that having broke a bough for his direction, he may at any time unharbour that *hart*.

How to find a HART *loſt the night before.*

A Huntſman may fail of killing a *hart* divers ways; ſometimes by reaſon of great heat, or by being overtaken with the night, or the like.

If it ſhould happen ſo, do as follows.

Firſt, they who follow the hounds, muſt mark the place where they left the chace, and at break of day bring the blood hound to it, with the kennel after him.

If any hound vents, whom he knows to be no lier nor babbler, he ſhall put his hound to it, whooping twice, or blowing two notes with his horn, to call all his fellows about him; and if he find where the *hart* is gone into ſome likely covert or grove, then muſt he draw his hounds about it, and if he there renews the ſlot or view, let him firſt conſider whether it be right or not, if it be right let him blow his horn.

And if he happens to find five or ſix layers, let it not ſeem ſtrange, for *harts* hunted and ſpent do frequently make many layers together, becauſe they cannot ſtand, but lie and feed.

Harts which are hunted, moſt commonly run up the wind, and ſtrait forwards as far as they are able, and finding any water or ſoil, do ſtay a long time therein, by which means their joints are ſo benummed and ſtiffened, that coming out, they cannot go far, nor ſtand up long, and therefore are forced to take up with any harbour they can find which may be a preſent covert to them.

To find a HART *in high woods.*

In the ſeeking of a *hart* in high woods, you muſt have

have regard to two things; that is, the thickets of the foreſt, and the ſeaſon.

If it be in very hot weather, gnats, horſe-flies, and the like, drive the deer out of the high woods, and they diſperſe themſelves into ſmall groves and thickets, near places of good feeding.

According to the coverts which are in the foreſt, ſo muſt the Huntſman make his inquiry; for ſometimes the *hart* lies in the tufts of white-thorn, ſometimes under little trees, other whiles under great trees in the high woods, and ſometimes in the ſkirts of the foreſt, under the ſhelter of little groves and coppices.

And therefore the Huntſman muſt make his ring-walk large or ſmall, according to the largeneſs of thoſe harbours or coverts.

How to unharbour a HART *and caſt off the hounds.*

When the relays are well ſet and placed, let the Huntſman with his pole walk before the kennel of hounds; and being come to the blemiſhes, let him take notice of the ſlot, and ſuch other marks as may be obſerved from the view of the deer, in order that he may know whether the hounds run riot or not.

Then the Huntſman muſt caſt abroad about the covert, to diſcover the *hart* when he is unharboured, the better to diſtinguiſh him by his head or otherwiſe.

If the blood-hound, in drawing, chance to overſhoot, and draw wrong or counter, then the Huntſman muſt draw him back, ſaying, *Back*, *back*, *ſoft*, *ſoft*, until he hath ſet him right again; and if he perceive that the hound hath mended his fault, by his kneeling down and obſerving the ſlot or ports, he muſt then cheriſh him, by clapping him on the back, and giving him encouraging words; thus muſt he draw on with his hounds till he deſcries the deer.

Some

Some deers are ſo cunning and crafty, that when they are unharboured from their layer, they will coaſt round about to find ſome other deer, whereby the hounds may be confounded in the change of hunts.

If the Huntſman have the *hart* in view, he ought ſtill to draw upon the ſlot, blowing and hallooing till the hounds are come in. When he finds they are in full cry, and take it right, he then may mount, keeping under the wind and coaſt, to croſs the hounds that are in chace to help them at default, if need require.

The ſubtilties which are uſed in hunting a HART *at force.*

A Huntſman ought never to come nearer to the hounds in cry, than fifty or ſixty paces, eſpecially at the firſt uncoupling, or at caſting off the relays; for if a *hart* make doublings, or wheel about or acroſs before the hounds, (as he ſeldom does) if then you come in too haſtily, you will ſpoil the ſlot or view, and ſo the hounds, for want of ſcent, will be apt to over-ſhoot the chace.

But if after you have hunted an hour, the Huntſman perceives that the *hart* makes out end-ways before the hounds, and that they follow in full cry, taking it right, then he may come in nearer, and blow a recheat to the hounds to encourage them.

Hereupon the *hart* will frequently ſeek other deer at layer, and rouze them, on purpoſe to make the hounds hunt chace, and will lie down in ſome of their layers flat upon his belly, and ſo ſuffer the hounds to over-ſhoot him; and that they may not either ſcent or vent him, he will gather up all his four feet under his belly, and will blow or breathe on ſome moiſt place of the ground, ſo that the hounds may paſs by him poſſibly, tho' within a yard, and never vent him.

For

For which cauſe Huntſmen ſhould blemiſh at thoſe places, where they ſee the *hart* enter into a thicket, to the end, that if the hounds ſhould fall to change, they may return to thoſe blemiſhes, and put the hounds to the right ſlot and view, until they have rouzed and found him again.

A *hart* has another way to bring the hounds to change, and that is, when he ſees himſelf cloſely purſued, and that he cannot ſhun them, he will break into one thicket after another to find deer, rouzing and herding with them, continuing ſo to do ſometimes above an hour, before he will part from them or break herd.

Finding himſelf ſpent, he will break herd, and fall a doubling and croſſing in ſome hard highway that is much beaten, or elſe in ſome river or brook, in which he will keep as long as his breath will permit him; and if he be far before the hounds, it may be then he will uſe the former device, in gathering his legs under his belly, as he lies flat along upon ſome hard dry place.

Sometimes he will take ſoil, and ſo cover himſelf under the water that you ſhall perceive nothing but his noſe.

In this caſe the Huntſman muſt have a ſpecial regard to his old hounds, who will hunt leiſurely and fearfully, whereas the young hounds will over-ſhoot their game.

If the hounds happen to be at a default, and hunt in ſeveral companies, then it may be gueſſed that the *hart* hath broken herd from the freſh deer, and that the freſh deer have ſeparated themſelves alſo: then notice is to be taken how the old *ſtaunch hounds* make it, and to obſerve the ſlot; and where you ſee any of the old hounds challenge, cheriſh and encourage that hound or hounds, haſtening the reſt in to him, crying *hark* to ſuch a hound, calling him by his name.

Here

Here it is to be noted, that they cannot make it ſo well in the hard highways as in other places, becauſe they cannot have there ſo perfect a ſcent, either by reaſon of the tracks or footing of divers ſorts of beaſts, or by reaſon of the ſun drying up the moiſture, ſo that the duſt covereth the ſlot. Now in ſuch places (ſuch is the natural ſubtilty of the beaſt for ſelf-preſervation) the *hart* will make many croſſings and doublings, holding them long together, to make the hounds give over the chace.

In this caſe, the firſt care of the Huntſman is to make good the head, and then draw round apace; firſt down the the wind, tho' deer uſually go up the wind; and if the way is too hard to ſlot, then be ſure to try far enough back. Expert hounds will often do this of themſelves.

But if a *hart* break out into a champain country, and in the heat of the day too, *i. e.* between noon and three of the clock, then if the Huntſman perceive his hounds out of breath, he ought not to force them but comfort them; and though they do not call upon the ſlot or view, yet it is ſufficient if they do but wag their tails, for being almoſt ſpent, it is painful for them to call.

The laſt refuge of a *hart* that has been ſorely hunted, is the water, which in terms of art is called the *ſoil*; ſwimming oftneſt down the ſtream, keeping the middle, fearing leaſt by touching any bough by the water-ſide, he may give ſcent unto the hounds.

Whenever you come to a ſoil (according to the old rule, *He who will his chace find, let him firſt try up river and down the wind)* be ſure, if your hounds challenge but a yard above his going in, that he is gone up the river; for tho' he ſhould keep the very middle of the ſtream, yet will that, with the help of the wind, lodge part of the ſtream and imboſh that comes from him on the

on the bank, it may be a quarter of a mile lower, which hath deceived many.

Therefore firſt try up the ſtream, and where a deer firſt breaks ſoil, both man and hound will beſt perceive it.

Now the ways to know when a *hart* is ſpent, are theſe:

Firſt, He will run ſtiff, high and lompering.

Secondly, If his mouth be black and dry, without any ſoam upon it, and his tongue hanging out; but they will often cloſe their mouths to deceive ſpectators.

Thirdly, By his ſlot; for oftentimes he will cloſe his claws together as if he went at leiſure, and preſently again open them wide, making great glidings, and hitting his dew-glaws upon the ground, following the beaten paths without doublings, and ſometimes going all along by a ditch-ſide, ſeeking ſome gap, having not ſtrength to leap it: yet it has been often ſeen, that dead-run deer have taken very great leaps.

A Huntſman muſt therefore govern himſelf according to the ſubtilty and craft of the deer, obſerving the doublings and croſſings, and the places where they are made; making his rings little or great, according to the nature of the places, time, and ſeaſon; for hounds are apt to ſhoot where herbs and flowers have their moſt lively ſcent and odoriferous ſmell.

Neither is the perfection or imperfection of the hounds to be diſregarded. And if theſe things be done, it will be much if you loſe a *hart* by default.

To kill a HART *at bay.*

It is very dangerous to go in to a *hart* at bay, and eſpecially at rutting-time, for at that time they are moſt fierce.

There

There are two ſorts of bays; one on the land, and the other in the water. Now if the *hart* be in a deep water, where you cannot well come at him, then couple up your dogs; for ſhould they continue long in the water, it would endanger their ſurbating or foundring.

In this caſe, get a boat and ſwim to him, with dagger drawn, or elſe with a rope that has a nooſe, and throw it over his horns; for if the water be ſo deep that the *hart* ſwims, there is no danger in approaching him; otherwiſe you muſt be very cautious.

As to a *land bay*, if a *hart* be burniſhed, then you muſt conſider the place; for if it be in a plain and open place, where there is no wood nor covert, it is dangerous and difficult to come in to him; but if he be on a hedge ſide, or in a thicket, then, while the *hart* is ſtaring on the hounds, you may come ſoftly and covertly behind him and cut his throat.

If you miſs your aim, and the *hart* turn head upon you, then take refuge at ſome tree; and when the *hart* is at bay, couple up your hounds; and when you ſee the *hart* turn head to fly, gallop in roundly to him, and kill him with your ſword.

Directions at the Death of a HART *or* BUCK.

The firſt ceremony, when the huntſman comes in to the death of a deer, is, to cry, *ware haunch*, that the hounds may not break in to the deer; which being done, the next is the cutting his throat, and there blooding the youngeſt hounds, that they may the better love a deer, and learn to leap at his throat: then the *mort* having been blown, and all the company come in, the beſt perſon, who hath not taken ſay before, is to take up the knife that the keeper or huntſman is to lay acroſs the belly of the deer, ſome holding by the fore-legs, and the keeper or huntſman drawing down the pizzle, the perſon who takes ſay,

to draw the edge of the knife leiſurely along the middle of the belly, beginning near the briſket, and drawing a little upon it, enough in the length and depth to diſcover how fat the deer is; then he that is to break up the deer, firſt ſlits the ſkin from the cutting of the throat downwards, making the *arber*, that ſo the ordure may not break forth, and then he paunches him, rewarding the hounds with it.

In the next place, he is to preſent the ſame perſon, who took ſay, with a drawn hanger, to cut off the head of the deer. Which being done, and the hounds rewarded, the concluding ceremony is, if it be a ſtag, then one blows a tripple *mort*; and if a buck, a double one, and then all who have horns, blow a recheat in conſort, and immediately a general *whoop*, *whoop*.

It was formerly termed a wind or winding-horn; the horns, probably, were winding, or compaſſed, but afterwards ſtrait horns grew into uſe, and then they uſed to ſay, *blow a horn*, and *ſound a horn*; and now *French* or *German* horns are in repute.

In many caſes, formerly, leaſing was obſerved; that is, one was held either croſs a ſaddle or on a man's back, and, with a pair of dog-couples, receive ten pounds and a purſe, that is, ten ſtripes (according to the nature of the crime, more or leſs ſevere) and an eleventh that uſed to be as bad as the other ten, called a purſe.

There are many faults, as coming too late into the field; miſtaking any term of art: theſe are of the leſſer ſort; the greater are, hallooing a wrong deer, or leaving the field before the death of the deer, *&c.*

Of RABBITS *or* CONIES.

RABBETS. The *Rabbet* or *Coney* is an animal about the bigneſs of an ordinary cat, who hides herſelf in the woods, or makes burrows in the ground, to retire into for ſafety: ſhe has long ears, and a ſhort tail, but well covered with wool, and is moſtly of a grey and white colour. The young ones are called *ſucking-rabbits*. There are two ſorts, *viz.* the *wild*, and the *tame*; thoſe that are wild are bred in warrens, and are ſmaller and redder, have naturally more active bodies, are more ſhy and watchful, and their fleſh is more delicious by reaſon of the air of liberty wherein they breathe, and are not ſo melancholic: But the tame ones are quite contrary; nevertheleſs they make uſe of them in ſome places, to ſupply their warrens; and there, in proceſs of time, coming to be diveſted of their heavy nature, become more and more active than before.

The *rabbit* begins to breed at a year old, bears at leaſt ſeven times a year; ſhe carries her young in her belly thirty days, if ſhe litters in the month of *March*, and as ſoon as ſhe has kennelled, goes to buck again; neither can they ſuckle their young till they have been with buck. Tame *rabbets*, above all other beaſts, delight in impriſonment and ſolitarineſs; they are violently hot in the act of generation, performing it with ſuch vigour and exceſs, that they ſwoon, and lie in trances a good while after the act.

The males being given too much to cruelty, kill all the young ones they can come at, therefore the females, after they have kennelled, hide them, and cloſe up the holes in ſuch manner, that the buck may not find them: they increaſe wonderfully, bringing forth every month, therefore when kept tame in huts, they muſt be watched, and as ſoon as they have kennelled, muſt be

put

put to the buck, for they will otherwiſe mourn, and hardly bring up their young.

The huts in which tame *rabbets* are to be kept, ſhould be made of thin wainſcot boards, ſome about two foot ſquare, and one foot high, which ſquare muſt be divided into two rooms, one with open windows of wire, through which the *rabbet* may feed; and a leſs room without light, wherein ſhe may lodge and kennel; and a trough, wherein to put meat and other neceſſaries for her, before each of them; and thus you may make box upon box, in divers ſtories, keeping the bucks by themſelves, as alſo the does, unleſs it be ſuch as have not bred, with which you may let the buck lodge. Further, when a doe has kennelled one neſt, and then kennelled another, the firſt muſt be taken from her, and be put together into ſeveral boxes, amongſt *rabbets* of their own age, provided the boxes be not peſtered, but that they have eaſe and liberty.

For the choice of tame rich *conies*, it needs not to look to their ſhape, but to their richneſs; only that the bucks muſt be the largeſt and richeſt you can get; and that ſkin is eſteemed the beſt, that has the equalleſt mixture of black and and white hair together, yet the black ſhould rather ſhadow the white: a black ſkin with a few ſilver hairs, being much richer than a white ſkin with a few black ones.

As to the profit of tame rich *conies*, every one that is killed in ſeaſon, that is, from *Martinmas* till after *Candlemas*, is worth five others, as being much better and larger; and when another ſkin is worth two-pence or three-pence at the moſt, theſe are worth a ſhilling or upwards. Again, the increaſe is more; the tame ones, at one kindling, bringing forth more than the wild do; beſides, they are always ready at hand for the diſh, winter and ſummer, without the charge of

of nets, ferrets, &c. and their ſkins always paying their keeper's expence, with intereſt.

The beſt food for your tame *conies*, is the ſweeteſt, ſhorteſt, and beſt hay you can get; one load will feed two hundred couple a year, and out of the ſtock of two hundred, may be ſpent in the houſe as many as as are ſold in the market, and yet a good ſtock maintained to anſwer all caſualties. The hay muſt be put to them in little cloven ſticks, that they may with eaſe reach and pull it out of the ſame, but ſo as not to ſcatter or waſte any; and ſweet oats, and water, ſhould be put for them in the troughs under the boxes: and this ſhould be their ordinary and conſtant food, all other being to be uſed phyſically; as that you may, twice or three times in a fortnight, to cool their bodies, give them mallows, clover-graſs, ſour docks, blades of corn, cabbage, or colewort leaves, and the like, all which both cools and nouriſhes exceedingly; but ſweet grain ſhould be ſeldom uſed, ſince nothing rots them ſooner. Great care muſt be had, that when any graſs is cut for them where are weeds, that there is no hemlock amongſt it, for tho' they will eat it greedily, yet it is preſent poiſon to them, and ſuddenly kills them. Their huts alſo muſt be kept ſweet and clean every day, for their piſs and ordure is of ſo ſtrong and violent a ſavour, as will annoy themſelves as well as thoſe who look after them.

The infirmities to which tame *conies* are ſubject, are two-fold,

1. The *rot*; which comes by giving them green meat, or gathering greens for them, and giving them to them with the dew on; therefore let them have it but ſeldom, and then the drineſs of the hay will even dry up the moiſture, knit them, and keep them ſound.

2. There is a certain rage of madneſs, engendered from corrupt blood, ſpringing from the rankneſs of their

their keeping, and which is known by their wallowing and tumbling with their heels upwards, and leaping in their huts; to cure which, give them tare-thiſtle to eat.

Wild *rabbets* do a great deal of damage to vineyards, and all ſorts of corn, their teeth ſparing nothing that they come near; and in ſuch countries as abound with vineyards, they will eat the young ſhoots as ſoon as they begin to appear, and will do them ſo much damage, that it will endanger their ruin without ſome proper remedy; to prevent which, take ſome very ſmall ſticks of willow, well dried, dip one end of them into ſome melted brimſtone, and ſtick the other into the ground; let them be about a fathom diſtant from each other, and ſet fire to them; and this will prevent the *rabbets* (who hate the ſmell) from entering into any vineyard, on the ſide of which thoſe ſticks are ſet: the ſmell will laſt four or five days, at the expiration of which you muſt renew it, and ſo a third time, inſomuch, that in about ſixteen days, the ſhoots of the vine will be ſo ſtrong as not to be in danger of the inſults of theſe animals.

The ways of taking theſe creatures are various, particularly ſuch as ſtray from their burrows may be taken with ſmall greyhounds, or mungrels, bred up for that purpoſe; and their places of hunting are among buſhes, hedges, corn-fields, and freſh paſtures; and though you ſhould miſs killing them, yet they are thereby drove back to their burrows, over whoſe holes you may lay purſe-nets, and then put in a ferret cloſe-muffled, which will quickly make them bolt out again to the net, and ſo are caught.

The *ferret* ſometimes finds a *rabbet* aſleep, which ſhe ſurprizes and kills, ſucks her blood, lies upon her, and ſleeps there; in which caſe you are obliged either to kill her, or wait till ſhe awakes, which will be often five or ſix hours; and therefore you muſt fire five or

ſix

ſix times into the hole to awake her, upon which ſhe will come out; but you muſt always let her ſleep an hour before you fire, or elſe the noiſe will ſignify nothing.

When you take any of the does, you muſt turn them looſe, that you may not depopulate your warrens, and ſlit their ears, that they may not be killed by others, who ſometimes lie in wait to ſhoot them.

To force *rabbets* out of their burrows without a *ferret*, take ſome powder of orpine and brimſtone, old ſhoes, parchment, or cloth, and burn them at the mouth of the burrow, upon that ſide which the wind blows, and ſpread your purſe-net under the wind. Some put a crab or two into the holes, which will force them out.

Nets to take RABBETS *and* HARES.

Theſe nets muſt be made in the ſame manner as halliers, wherewith they take partridges. The meſh ſhould be an inch and half broad, made of good ſtrong thread, and treble twiſted; but if you would make meſhes lozenge-wiſe, you muſt allow four and twenty, and three fathom in length, and let them be well verged with long twiſted thread, of a brown colour.

But the net with ſquare meſhes will do better, in which caſe they allow five feet in breadth or height, and three or four fathom in length, according to the place; and in this no verging is required.

The firſt of theſe nets are to be placed in any path or tract, in any coppice or furrow; for *rabbets* and *hares* always follow the moſt eaſy and beaten path: You muſt take notice how the wind ſits, that you may ſo ſet the net, that the creature and wind may come together; if the wind be ſide-ways, it may do well enough, but never if the wind blows over the net

into

into the creature's face, for he will ſcent both it and you at a great diſtance, eſpecially a hare.

The way of taking wild CONIES.

There are divers ways of doing this, either by ſmall curs, or ſpaniels bred up to the ſport; and the places for hunting them who ſtraggle from their burrows, are among buſhes and hedges, corn-fields, or freſh paſtures; or elſe by courſing them with ſmall grey-hounds: and though you may miſs killing them, yet thereby you drive them back to their burrows, and preſerve them from being a prey to others.

You may alſo drive them into their burrows, and ſpread purſe-nets upon the holes, ſo that when they come out, they will be entangled in them, and ſo be taken: Now to force them out, it will be proper to have a ferret or two, whoſe mouths muſt be couped and muffled up, and ſo put into the holes, which will cauſe the conies to bolt out into your purſe-nets; for the conies will eaſily ſmell the ferrets, and at their approach, (being of a timorous nature) dare not ſtay to ſee them.

And for the more certain taking them, it would be proper to have a hay net or two, which ſhould be pitched up at a ſmall diſtance, againſt the burrows you intend to hunt.

Of FERRETS.

A FERRET is a little creature that is bred naturally in *England*, but not in *France*, *Germany*, *Italy*, and *Spain*; they are tamed for the uſe of thoſe who keep warrens, and others.

The body of this animal is longer than is proportionable; their colour is variable, ſometimes black and

white upon the belly; but moſt commonly of a yellowiſh ſandy colour, like wool dyed in urine.

The head is ſomething like that of a mouſe, and therefore into what hole ſoever ſhe can put it, all the body will eaſily follow after.

The eyes are ſmall but fiery, like red hot iron, and therefore ſhe ſees moſt clearly in the dark.

Her voice is a whining cry without changing of it: ſhe hath only two teeth in her nether chap, ſtanding out and not joined and growing together.

The genital of the male is of a bony ſubſtance, and therefore it always ſtandeth ſtiff, and is not leſſer at one time than another.

The pleaſure of the ſenſe of copulation, is not in the genital part but in the muſcles, tunicles, and nerves wherein the ſaid genital runs.

When they are in copulation, the female lieth down, or bendeth her knees, and continually crieth like a cat, either becauſe the male claweth her with his nails, or by reaſon of the roughneſs of his genital.

The ferret uſually brings forth ſeven or eight at a time, carrying them in her belly for forty days: the young ones are blind for thirty days after they are littered, and they may be uſed for procreation, as their dam is within forty days after they can ſee.

When they have been tamed, they are nouriſhed with milk, or barley bread, and they can faſt a very long time.

When they go they contract their long back, and make it ſtand upright in the middle round like a bowl: when they are touched, they ſmell like a *martel*, and they ſleep very much.

The *ferret* is a bold audacious animal, an enemy to all others but his own kind; drinking and ſucking in the blood of the beaſt it biteth, but eateth not the fleſh.

When the warrener has occaſion to uſe his *ferret*, he firſt makes a noiſe in the warren to frighten the conies

conies who are abroad in their burrows, and then he pitcheth his nets; after that he puts his ferret into the earth, having muzzled her mouth, ſo that ſhe may not ſeize but only frighten the conies out of their burrows, who are afterwards driven by dogs into the nets or hays, planted for them.

Of OTTERS.

SOME are of opinion, that the *otter* is of the *beaver* kind, being an amphibious creature, living both in the water and on the land; beſides, the outward form of the parts beareth a likeneſs of the *beaver*; ſome ſay, were his tail off, he were in parts like the *beaver*, differing in nothing but habitation, for the *beaver* frequents the ſalt water as well as the freſh, but the *otter* never goeth to the ſalt.

Though the *otter* liveth in the water, yet he doth not, like fiſhes, breathe through the benefit of the water, he taketh breath like other four-footed beaſts, yet will remain a long time underneath the water without reſpiration.

If he wants prey in the waters, then he will quit them for the land; and if by painful hunting on ſhore he cannot fill his belly, he will feed on herbs, ſnails, or frogs; neither will he take leſs pains in the water to ſatisfy his hunger, for he will ſwim for two miles together againſt the ſtream, that ſo, when he has filled his belly, the current may carry him down again to his deſigned lodging, which is always near the water, very artificially built with boughs, ſprigs, and ſticks, couched together in excellent order, wherein he ſits to keep him from the wet.

In the hunting of fiſh, he often puts his noſe above water to take breath: he is a creature of wonderful

ſwiftneſs and activity in taking his prey, and for greedineſs, takes more than he knows was to do with.

He is a very ſubtil and crafty beaſt, and endowed with a wonderful ſagacity and ſenſe of ſmelling, inſomuch that he can directly wind the fiſhes in the water a mile or two diſtance from him.

The fleſh of this beaſt is both cold and filthy, becauſe it feedeth on ſtinking fiſh, and therefore not fit to be eaten; yet it is eaten in *Germany*, and the *Carthuſian* Friars, who are forbidden the eating of all manner of fleſh of other four-footed beaſts, yet they are not prohibited the eating of *otters*. There are thoſe in *England*, who lately have highly valued an *otter*-pie, much good may do them with it.

Of Otter-Hunting.

This is performed by dogs, called *otter-hounds*, and alſo with a ſort of inſtruments, called *otter-ſpears*, with which when they find themſelves wounded, they make to land and fight with the dogs, and that furiouſly, as if they were ſenſible that the cold water would annoy their green wounds.

There is indeed craft to be uſed in the hunting them; but they may be catched in ſnares under water, and by river-ſides; but great care muſt be taken, for they bite ſorely, and venomouſly, and if they happen to remain long in the ſnare, they will not fail to get themſelves free by their teeth.

In hunting them, one man muſt be on one ſide of the river, and another on the other, both beating the banks with dogs, and the beaſt not being able to endure the water long, you will ſoon diſcover if there be an *otter* or not in quarter, for he muſt come out to make his ſpraints, and in the night ſometimes to feed on graſs and herbs.

If any of the hounds finds out an *otter*, then view the ſoft grounds and moiſt places, to find out which way

way he bent his head; if you cannot diſcover this by the marks, you may partly perceive it by the ſpraints; and then follow the hounds, and lodge him as a hart or deer.

But if you do not find him quickly, you may imagine he is gone to couch ſomewhere farther off from the river; for ſometimes they will go to feed a conſiderable way from the place of their reſt, chuſing rather to go up the river than down it.

The perſons that go a hunting *otters*, muſt carry their ſpears, to watch his vents, that being the chief advantage; and if they perceive him ſwimming under water, they muſt endeavour to ſtrike him with their ſpears, and if they miſs, muſt purſue him with the hounds; which, (if they be good, and perfectly entered) will go chanting and trailing along by the river-ſide, and will beat every root of a tree, and oſier-bed, and tuft of bull-ruſhes; nay, they will ſometimes take water, and bait the beaſt, like a ſpaniel, by which means he will hardly eſcape.

Of BIRD-LIME.

BIrdlime is ſtuff prepared after different ways; the common method is to peel a good quantity of holly bark about midſummer, fill a pan with it, put ſpring water to it; boil it till the grey and white bark ariſe from the green, which will require twelve hours boiling; then take it off the fire, drain the water well from it, ſeparate the barks, lay the green bark on the ground in ſome cool cellar, covered with any green rank weeds, ſuch as *dock thiſtles*, *hemlock*, &c. to a good thickneſs; let it lie ſo fourteen days, by which time it will be a perfect mucilage; then pound it well in a ſtone mortar, till it becomes a tough paſte, and that none of the bark be diſcernable; next after waſh it

well in ſome running ſtream, as long as you perceive the leaſt motes in it: then put it into an earthen pot to ferment, ſcum it for four or five days, as often as any thing riſes, and when no more comes change it into a freſh earthen veſſel, and preſerve it for uſe in this manner. Take what quantity you think fit, put it in an earthen pipkin, add a third part of capons or gooſe greaſe to it, well clarified, or oil of walnuts, which is better, incorporate them on a gentle fire, and ſtir it continually till it is cold, and thus it is finiſhed.

To prevent froſt; take a quarter of as much oil of *petroleum* as you do gooſe greaſe, and no cold will congeal it: the Italians make their's of the berries of the *miſletoe tree* heated after the ſame manner, and mix it with nut oil, an ounce to a pound of lime, and taking it from the fire, add half an ounce of turpentine, which qualifies it alſo for the water.

Great quantities of bird-lime are brought from *Damaſcus*, ſuppoſed to be made of *ſebeſtens*, becauſe we ſometimes find the kernels, but it is ſubject to froſt, impatient of wet, and will not laſt above a year or two good. There comes alſo of it into *England* from *Spain*, which reſiſts water, but is of an ill ſcent, it is ſaid the bark of our lantona, or way faring ſhrubs, will make as good birdlime as any.

How to uſe BIRDLIME.

When your lime is cold, take your rods, and warm them a little over the fire; then take your lime, and wind it about the top of your rod, then draw your rods aſunder one from another and cloſe them again, continually plying and working them together, till by ſmearing one upon another, you have equally beſtowed on each rod a ſufficient proportion of lime.

If you lime any ſtrings, do it when the lime is very hot and at the thinneſt, beſmearing the ſtrings on all ſides,

ſides, by folding them together, and unfolding them again.

If you lime ſtraws, it muſt be done likewiſe when the lime is very hot, doing a great quantity together, as many as you can well graſp in your hand, toſſing and working them before the fire till they are beſmeared, every ſtraw having it's due proportion of lime; having ſo done, put them up in caſes of leather, till you have occaſion to uſe them.

The beſt way of making water BIRDLIME.

Buy what quantity you think fit of the ſtrongeſt birdlime you can procure, and waſh it in a clear ſpring water, till you find it very pliable, and the hardneſs thereof removed; then beat out the water extraordinary well, till you cannot perceive a drop to appear, then dry it well; after this, put it into an earthen pot, and mingle therewith capons greaſe unſalted, ſo much as will make it run, then add thereto two ſpoonfuls of ſtrong vinegar, a ſpoonful of the beſt ſalad oil, and a ſmall quantity of *Venice* turpentine; this is the allowance of theſe ingredients, which muſt be added to every pound of ſtrong birdlime as aforeſaid.

Having thus mingled them, boil all gently over a ſmall fire ſtirring it continually, then take it from the fire, let it cool, when at any time you have occaſion to uſe it, warm it, and then anoint your twigs or ſtraws, or any other ſmall things, and no water will take away the ſtrength thereof.

This ſort of lime is beſt, eſpecially for ſnipes and feldfares.

Of taking ſmall BIRDS, *which uſe hedges and buſhes, with lime-twigs.*

The great lime buſh is beſt for this uſe, which you muſt take after this manner: cut down the main

branch or bough of any bushy tree, whose branch and twigs are long, thick, smooth, and straight, without either pricks or knots, of which the willow or birch tree are the best; when you have prickt it and trimmed it from all superfluity, making the twigs neat and clean, then take the best birdlime, well mixed and wrought together with goose grease, or capons grease, which being warmed, lime every twig therewith within four fingers of the bottom.

The body from whence the branches have their rise must be untouched with lime.

Be sure you do not daub your twigs with too much lime, for that will give distaste to the birds, yet let none want it's proportion, or have any part left bare which ought to be touched: for as too much will deter them from coming, so too little will not hold them where they are there. Having so done, place your bush in some quickset or dead hedge near unto towns ends, back yards, old houses, or the like; for these are the resort of small birds in the spring time; in the summer and harvest, in groves, bushes, or white-thorn trees, quickset hedges, near corn fields, fruit trees, flax and hemp lands, and in the winter about houses, hovels, barns, stacks, or those places where stand ricks of corn, or scattered chaff, &c.

As near as you can to any of these haunts plant your lime bush, and plant yourself also at a convenient distance undiscovered, imitating with your mouth several notes of birds, which you must learn by frequent practice, walking the fields for that purpose very often, observing the variety of several birds sounds, especially such as they call one another by.

Some have been so expert herein, that they could imitate the notes of twenty several sorts of birds at least, by which they have caught ten birds to another's one that was ignorant therein.

If you cannot attain it by your industry, you must buy

buy then a bird-call, of which there are ſeveral ſorts and eaſy to be framed; ſome of wood, ſome of horn, ſome of cane, and the like.

Having learnt firſt how to uſe this call, you ſhall ſit and call the birds unto you, and as any of them light on your buſh, ſtep not out unto them till you ſee them ſufficiently entangled; neither is it requiſite to run for every ſingle bird, but let them alone till more come, for the fluttering is as good as a ſtale to entice them more.

This exerciſe you may uſe from ſun riſing till ten a clock in the morning, and from one till almoſt ſun ſet.

You may take theſe ſmall birds, only with lime-twigs without the buſh.

Some boys have taken two hundred, or three hundred ſmall twigs about the bigneſs of ruſhes, and about three inches long, and have gone with them into a field where there were hemp cocks: upon the tops of half a ſcore lying all round together, they have ſtuck their twigs, and then have gone and beat that field, or the next it, where they ſaw any birds, and commonly in ſuch fields, there are infinite numbers of linnets and green birds which are great lovers of hempſeed.

And they flying in ſuch vaſt flocks, they have caught at one fall of them upon the cocks eight dozen at a time.

But to return there is a pretty way of taking birds with lime-twigs, by placing near them a ſtale or two made of living baits, placing them aloft that they may be viſible to the birds there abouts, who will no ſooner be perceived, but every bird will come and gaze wondring at the ſtrangeneſs of the ſight, and having no other convenient lighting place but where the lime-twigs are, you may take what number you liſt of them. But the *owl* is a far better ſtale than the *bat*, being bigger and more eaſily to be perceived, beſides he is never

never ſeen abroad, but he is followed and perſecuted by all the birds that are near.

If you have not a living *bat* or *owl* their ſkins will ſerve as well, ſtuffed, and will laſt you twenty years, there are ſome who have uſed an owl cut in wood and naturally painted, with wonderful ſucceſs.

Another method of taking all manner of ſmall BIRDS *with* BIRDLIME.

In cold weather, that is in froſt or ſnow, all ſorts of ſmall birds together in flocks, as *larks*, *chaffinches*, *linnets*, *goldfinches*, *yellowhammers*, *buntings*, *ſparrows*, &c.

All theſe except the *lark* do perch on trees or buſhes, as well as feed on the ground.

If they reſort about your houſe, or adjacent fields, then uſe birdlime that is well prepared, and not too old; which order after the following manner.

Put the birdlime into an earthen diſh, adding to it ſome freſh lard, or capon's greaſe, putting one ounce of either, to a quarter of a pound of birdlime; then ſetting it over the fire, melt it gently together; but you muſt be ſure not to let it boil, which would take away the ſtrength of the *birdlime* and ſpoil it.

It being thus prepared, and you being furniſhed with a quantity of wheat ears; cut the ſtraw about a foot long beſides the ears, and lime them for about ſix inches from the bottom of the ears to the middle of the ſtraw; the lime being warmed that it may run the thinner upon the ſtraw, and therefore be the leſs diſcernable, and liable to be ſuſpected by the birds.

Then go into the field, carrying with you a bag of chaff, and threſhed ears, which ſcatter together for the compaſs of twenty yards in width (this will be in a ſnowy ſeaſon,) then ſtick up the limed ſtraws with the ears leaning, or at the ends touching the ground, then retire from the place, and traverſe the grounds all round about; and by that means, you by diſturbing the

the birds in other haunts, they will fly to the place where the chaff, &c. has been ſcattered, and the limed ſtraws ſet up, and pecking at the ears of corn, and finding that they ſtick upon them; they will ſtraitway mount up from the earth, and in their flight the bird limed ſtraws, lying under their wings will cauſe them to fall, and not being able to diſengage themſelves from the ſtraw, may be taken with eaſe. You muſt not go and take them up, when you ſee five or ſix entangled, for that may prevent you from taking as many dozen at a time.

If the birds that fall, where your limed ſtraws are, be larks, do not go near them till they riſe of themſelves and fly in great flocks; by this method ſome have caught five or ſix dozen at a lift.

Some of theſe ſtraws may be laid nearer home, for taking *finches*, *ſparrows*, *yellowhammers*, &c. which reſort near to houſes and frequent barn-doors; where they may be eaſily taken by the foregoing method.

Having performed this in the morning; take away all the limed ears, that ſo the birds may feed boldly, and not be diſturbed or frighted againſt next morning, and in the afternoon bait the ſame place with freſh chaff and ears of corn, and let them reſt till the next morning; and then having ſtuck up freſh limed wheat ears, repeat your morning birding recreation.

Of CANARY-BIRDS.

THE *Canary-bird* is an admirable ſinging bird, of a green colour, that takes it's name from the place from whence they firſt came, *viz.* from the *Canary Iſles*, and no where elſe; but of late years, there is a ſort of birds, that are brought in abundance from *Germany*, eſpecially from *Tirol*, and are therefore called *German* birds; being a much better ſort than the other

other, though their originals are ſuppoſed to have been firſt brought from the Canaries.

Theſe birds, that is the cocks, never grow fat, and they cannot be diſtinguiſhed by ſome country people from common green-birds; though the *Canary-birds* are much luſtier, have a longer tail, and differ much in the heaving of the paſſages of the throat, when they ſing.

But to make a right choice of this bird, and to know when he has a good ſong; in the firſt place, let him be a long bird, ſtanding ſtrait and not crouching, but ſprightly like a ſparrow-hawk, ſtanding with life and boldneſs, and not ſubject to be fearful.

Theſe birds being ſo much eſteemed for their pleaſing ſong are ſometimes ſold at a high price, at ten or fifteen ſhillings a piece, more or leſs according to the goodneſs and excellency of their notes, there being a great difference in them.

It is very adviſable before you buy, firſt to hear them ſing, for the buyer will then pleaſe his ears; for one fancies a ſong bird, another a very harſh bird; if he be not ſo ſweet: though undoubtedly the beſt *Canary-bird* in general, is that which has the moſt variety of notes, and holds out in ſinging the longeſt.

In order to know whether a bird is in health before you buy him; take him out of the ſtore cage, and put him in a clean cage ſingly, and if he ſtand up boldly without crouching or ſhrinking in his feathers, and look with a briſk eye, and not ſubject to clap his head under his wing, it is a ſign that he is in good health; but yet he may be an unhealthy bird ſtill.

But the greateſt matter is to obſerve his dunging; if he bolts his tail like a nightingale, after he has dunged, it is a great ſign that he is not in perfect health, though he may ſing at preſent and look pretty briſk, you may aſſure yourſelf, it will not be long before he is ſick; but if his dung be very thin like water, or of a

ſlimy

ſlimy white without any blackneſs in it, it is a ſign of approaching death.

When a Canary-bird is in perfect health, his dung lies round and hard, with a fine white on the outſide and dark within; dries quickly, and the larger the dung is the better it is with him, ſo that it be long, round and hard; but as to a feed bird; he very ſeldom dungs ſo hard, unleſs he be very young.

Canary-birds are ſubject to many diſeaſes, as impoſthumes, which affect the head and cauſe them to fall ſuddenly from the perch, and die in a ſhort time if not ſpeedily cured.

The moſt approved medicine is an ointment made of freſh butter and capons greaſe, melted together, with which anoint the top of the bird's head, for two or three days together, and it will diſſolve it, and cure him; but if you have let it alone too long, then after you have anointed him three or four times, ſee whether the place of his head be ſoft; and if ſo open it gently and let out the matter, which will be like the yolk of an egg; when you have done this, anoint the place, and this will immediately cure him without any more to do.

And if you find the impoſthume at any time return, do as before directed; you muſt alſo give him *figs*, and in his water let him have a ſlice or two of *liquoriſh*, with white ſugar candy in his water.

Some are ſo curious as to breed theſe birds in *England*, and they have excelled all others; now for the ordering of theſe birds when they begin to build, or are intended for breeding, make a convenient cage, or prepare a room that may be fit for that purpoſe, taking care to let it have an outlet towards the riſing of the ſun; where you muſt have a piece of wire; that they may have egreſs and regreſs at their pleaſure: when this has been done, ſet up ſome brooms, either *heath* or *frail*, in the corners of it, opening them in the mid-

dle,

dle, and if the room be pretty high two or three brooms may be ſet under one another, but then you muſt make partitions with boards over the top of every broom, otherwiſe they will dung on one another's heads; neither will they endure to ſee themſelves ſo near each other's neſts; for the cock and hen will be apt to fly on an hen that is not matcht to them, when they ſee them juſt under their neſt; which many times cauſes the ſpoiling of their eggs and young ones.

In the next place you muſt cauſe ſomething to be made ſo convenient, and of ſuch bigneſs, as may hold meat a conſiderable time, that you may not be diſturbing them continually, and a proper veſſel for water alſo; and the place where the ſeed is intended to be put, muſt be ſo ordered that it may hang out of the reach of the mice, for they are deſtroyers of them: you muſt likewiſe prepare ſome ſtuff of ſeveral ſorts of things, ſuch as cotton, wool, ſmall dead graſs, elk's hair, and a long ſort of moſs that grows by ditch ſides or in the woods, for them to build their neſts withal.

Dry them well before you put them together, then mingle all well, and put them up into a net like a cabbage net, hanging it ſo that they may with eaſe pull it out.

You muſt alſo ſet perches about the room, and if it be large enough ſet a tree in the middle of it, that ſo they may take the more pleaſure, and always remember to proportion your birds, according to the largeneſs of the room, or rather let it be underſtocked than overſtocked, for they are birds that love their liberty.

When you perceive them to begin to build and carry ſtuff, give them once a day or in two days at leaſt, a little greens and ſome coarſe ſugar; for that will cauſe a ſlipperineſs in the body; that ſo the eggs may come forth without injuring the birds; for they die many times in laying the firſt egg, which is a loſs to the breeder; firſt in reſpect to his firſt breed, then to the

unpairing

unpairing of the cock, to which you ought to put another hen, whether he will pair or no: but it would be much better if that cock were taken out, than ſuffered to continue in the breeding place, eſpecially if it be ſmall; but in a large place with pairs he cannot do that injury, and it will be a difficult matter to diſtinguiſh which is the cock of that hen that died, and as difficult to take him in a large place, without doing more injury than the bird comes to: ſo that it will be beſt to let him reſt to the end of the year, when if you leave but two or three pair together, it will be the beſt way to take him out, and match him with another hen, and then put him in again.

Beſides when you find that they have built their neſts, the neſts that have their breeding ſtuff in them, may be taken away, for they will be apt to build upon their eggs with new ſtuff, if they do not lay preſently.

As to the time of their breeding, it is uſually three times a year, *viz.* in *April*, *May*, and *June*, and ſometimes in *Auguſt*: and as for ordering the young ones, they muſt not be left too long in the neſts; for if ſo they are very apt to grow ſullen, and will not feed kindly; therefore they are to be taken out at about nine or ten days old, and put into a little baſket and covered over with a net, or elſe they will be apt to jump out upon the firſt opening of the baſket and be hurt, if they fall down.

They muſt alſo be kept very warm for the firſt week: for they will be very tender, ſubject to the cramp, and not digeſt their meat, if they take cold.

And when they are taken from the old *Canaries*, let it be in the evening, and if poſſible, when the old ones are out of ſight; otherwiſe they will be very apt to take diſtate, when they ſit again and have young ones, and ready at every fright to forſake both their young and their eggs.

Then

Then as to the preparation of their meat; ſoak ſome of the largeſt rape-ſeed in water for twenty or twenty four hours; but if the water be a little warm twelve hours may be enough, then drain the water from the ſeed, and put a third part of white bread to it, and a little canary-ſeed in flower, and mix them all together.

Then with a ſmall ſtick, take up a little at the end of it, and give every bird ſome, two or three times over; for if you overcharge their ſtomachs at firſt, they ſeldom thrive after it.

For you muſt know that the old ones give them but a little at a time, and the meat they receive from them, is warmed in the ſtomach before they give it them, and then all rape is hulled, which lies not ſo hard at the ſtomach, as thoſe ſeeds which have the ſkin on.

Neither muſt their meat be made too dry; for then they will be apt to be vent burnt, becauſe all the ſeeds are hot.

For it is obſervable that the old ones, conſtantly drink after they have eaten ſeeds, and a little before they feed their young ones: and they commonly ſit a quarter of an hour feeding them, to keep them warm, that the meat may the better nouriſh them; therefore when you have fed them, let them be covered up very warm, that their meat may the better digeſt with them.

Laſtly, not to admit the ſeveral names of theſe birds at different times and ages: ſuch as are above three years old are called *Runts*, thoſe above two are named *Eriſſes*, and thoſe of the firſt year that the old ones bring up are called *Branchers*; thoſe that are new flown and cannot feed themſeves *Puſhers*, and thoſe that are bred up by hand *Neſtlings*.

Of PARTRIDGES.

PARTRIDGES being naturally a cowardly, fearful, ſimple bird, are eaſily deceived or beguiled with any device whatever, by train-bait, engine, call, ſtale, or other enticement.

I ſhall begin in the firſt place to conſider their haunts, which are not (like the pheaſants) certain, but various, any covert will ſerve their turn, and ſome times none at all.

The places they delight in moſt, are corn-fields, eſpecially whilſt the corn grows, for under that cover they ſhelter, ingender and breed: neither are thoſe places unfrequented by them when the corn is cut down, by reaſon of the grain they find therein, eſpecially in wheat-ſtubble, and the height thereof they delight in, being to them as a covert or ſhelter. Now when the wheat-ſtubble is much trodden by men or beaſts, they then betake themſelves to the barley-ſtubble, provided it be freſh and untrodden; and they will, in the furrows, amongſt the clots, brambles, and long graſs, hide both themſelves and covies, which are ſometimes twenty in number, or twenty-five; nay I have heard of thirty in a covey.

Now after the winter-ſeaſon is come, and that theſe ſtubble-fields are ploughed up, or over-ſoiled with cattle, then do theſe partridges reſort into the up-land meadows, and lodge in the dead graſs, or fog under hedges, amongſt mole-hills, or under the roots of trees, ſometimes they reſort to coppices and under-woods, eſpecially if any corn-fields are near adjacent, or where grows broom, brakes, fern, or any covert whatſoever.

In the harveſt-time, when every field is full of men and cattle, then in the day-time you will find them in the fallow-fields which are next adjoining to the corn-fields,

fields, where they lie lurking till evening, and then they feed among the ſheaves of corn; as alſo early in the morning.

When you know their haunts, according to the ſituation of the country and ſeaſon of the year, your next care muſt be to find them out in their haunts, which is done ſeveral ways. Some do it by the eye only; and this art can never be taught, but learned by frequent experience, diſtinguiſhing thereby the colour of the *Partridge* from that of the earth, and how, and in what manner they lodge and couch together; by which purpoſe you may come near enough to them, they being a very lazy bird, and ſo unwilling to take the wing, that you may almoſt ſet your foot upon them before they will ſtir, provided you don't ſtand and gaze on them, but be in continual motion, otherwiſe they will ſpring up and be gone.

Another way to diſcover them, is by going to their haunts very early in the morning, or at the cloſe of the evening, which is called the *jucking-time*, and there liſten for the calling of the cock *partridge*, which is very loud and earneſt, and after ſome few calls the hen will anſwer, and by this means they meet together, which you may know by their rejoicing and chattering one with another; upon hearing of which take your range about them, drawing nearer and nearer to the place you heard them *juck* in; then caſt your eye towards the furrows of the lands, and there you will ſoon find where the covey lies.

The beſt, ſureſt, and eaſieſt way for finding of *partridges*, is by the call, having firſt learned the true and natural notes of the *partridge*, knowing how to tune every note in it's proper key, applying them to their due times and ſeaſons.

Being perfect herein, either mornings or evenings, (all other times being improper) go to their haunts, and having conveyed your ſelf in ſome ſecret place where

where you may ſee and not be ſeen, liſten a while if you can hear the *partridges* call, if you do, anſwer them again in the ſame notes, and as they change or double their notes, ſo muſt you in like manner; thus continue doing till they draw nearer and nearer to you: Having them in your view, lay your ſelf on your back, and lie without motion, as if you were dead, by which means you may count their whole number.

Having attained to the knowledge of diſcovering where they lie, the next thing is how to catch them.

Firſt, *with* NETS.

The nets for taking of *partridges* muſt be every way like your pheaſant nets, both for length and breadth, except that the meſhes muſt be ſmaller, being made of the ſame thread, and dyed of the ſame colour.

Having found out the covey, draw forth your nets, and taking a large circumference, walk a good round pace with a careleſs eye, rather from than towards them, till you have trimmed your nets, and made them ready for that purpoſe; which done, you muſt draw in your circumference leſs and leſs, till you come within the length of your net, then pricking down a ſtick about three foot long, faſten one end of the line to your net, and make it faſt in the earth as you walk about, (for you muſt make no ſtop nor ſtay) then letting the net ſlip out of your hands, ſpread it open as you go, and to carry and lay it all over the *partridges*.

If you ſhould lie ſtraggling, ſo that you cannot cover them all with one net, then draw forth another, and do with that as you did with the former, and ſo a third if there be occaſion; having ſo done, ruſh in upon them, who affrighted, will fly up, and ſo be entangled in the nets.

Secondly, *With* BIRD-LIME.

Get the faireſt and largeſt wheat-ſtraws you can, and

and cut them off between knot and knot, and lime them with the ſtrongeſt lime. Then go the haunts of *partridges*, and call, if you are anſwered, then prick at ſome diſtance from you your lime-ſtraws, in many croſs-rows and ranks, croſs the lands and furrows, taking in two or three lands at leaſt, then lie cloſe and call again, not ceaſing till you have drawn them towards you, ſo that they be intercepted by the way by your limed ſtraws, which they ſhall no ſooner touch but they will be enſnared; and by reaſon they all run together like a brood of chickens, they will ſo beſmear and daub each other, that very few will eſcape.

This way of taking *partridges* is only to be uſed in ſtubble-fields, from *Auguſt* till *Chriſtmas*: but if you will take them in woods, paſtures, or meadows, then you muſt lime rods, as was before mentioned for pheaſants, and ſtick them in the ground after the ſame manner.

Thirdly, *To drive* PARTRIDGES.

The driving of *partridges* is more delightful than any other way of taking them: The manner of it is thus.

Make an engine in the form of a *horſe*, cut out of canvas, and ſtuff it with ſtraw, or ſuch like matter: with this artificial *horſe* and your nets go the haunts of *partridges*, and having found out the covey, and pitched your nets below, you muſt go above, and taking the advantage of the wind, you muſt drive downward: let your nets be pitched ſlope-wiſe, and hovering. Then having your face covered with ſomething that is green, or of a dark blue, you muſt, putting the engine before, ſtalk towards the *partridges* with a ſlow pace, raiſing them on their feet, but not their wings, and then they will run naturally before you.

If they chance to run a by-way, or contrary to your purpoſe, then croſs them with your engine, and by ſo facing

facing them, they will run into that track you would have them: thus by a gentle ſlow pace, you may make them run and go which way you will, and at laſt drive them into your net.

To take PARTRIDGES *with a Setting-dog.*

There is no art of taking them ſo excellent and pleaſant as by the help of a ſetting-dog, wherefore we proceed the ſport, we ſhall give you an account what this ſetting-dog is.

You are to underſtand then, that a ſetting-dog is a certain luſty land-ſpaniel, taught by nature to hunt the *partridges* more than any chace whatever, running the fields over with ſuch alacrity and nimbleneſs as if there was no limit to his fury and deſire, and yet by art, under ſuch excellent command, that in the very height of his career, by a hem or ſound of his maſter's voice, he ſhall ſtand, gaze about him, look in his maſter's face, and obſerve his directions, whether to proceed, ſtand ſtill, or retire: nay, when he is even juſt upon his prey, that he may even take it up in his mouth, yet his obedience is ſo framed by art, that preſently he will either ſtand ſtill or fall down flat on his belly, without daring to make any noiſe or motion till his maſter come to him, and then he'll proceed in all things to follow his directions.

Having a dog thus qualified by art and nature, take him with you where *partridges* haunt, there caſt off your dog, and by ſome word of encouragement that he is acquainted with, engage him to range, but never too far from you; and ſee that he beat his ground juſtly and even, without caſting about or flying now here, now there, which the mettle of ſome will do, if not corrected and reproved; therefore when you perceive this fault, you muſt preſently call him in with a hem, and ſo check him that he dare not do the like again for that day; ſo he will range afterwards with more temperance,

temperance, ever and anon looking in his maſter's face, as if he would gather from thence whether he did well or ill.

If in your dog's ranging you perceive him to ſtop on a ſudden, or ſtand ſtill, you muſt then make in to him, (for without doubt he hath ſet the *partridge*) and as ſoon as you come to him, command him to go nearer if him, but he goes not, but either lies ſtill or ſtands ſhaking his tail, as who would ſay here they are under my noſe, and withal now and then looks back; then ceaſe from urging him further, and take your circumference, walking faſt, with a careleſs eye, looking ſtrait before the noſe of the dog, and thereby ſee how the covey lie, whether cloſe or ſtraggling.

Then commanding the dog to lie ſtill, draw forth your net, and prick one end to the ground, and ſpread your net all open, and ſo cover as many of the *partridges* as you can; which done, make in with a noiſe and ſpring up the *partridges*, which ſhall no ſooner riſe but they will be entangled in the net. And if you let go the old cock and hen, it will be a means to increaſe your paſtime.

Of PHEASANTS.

A PHEASANT is a bird about the bigneſs of a cock, having a crooked bill, and feathers of various colours; it's fleſh is delicious, and much coveted. Now to judge aright of this bird for eating, a cock, if young, has a ſhort ſpur, if old, a ſharp ſmall ſpur; ſee that it be not pared; if fat, it has a vein on the ſide of the breaſt under the wing; if new, a fat firm vent; if you touch it hard with your finger, it will peel; then if young, it has a ſmooth leg, and a fine ſmooth grain on the fleſh; if old, it has a rugged wrinkled grain on the fleſh; and full of hairs, like an old yard-hen; ſo

if ſhe be full of eggs, ſhe will have a faſt and open vent, if not full, a cloſe vent.

Of PHEASANT-TAKING.

A rural diverſion, performed with nets, and only in crowing-time, which is about the end of *February*, and in *March*, before they begin to breed: It is done either generally or particularly; the firſt is, when the whole *eye*, *viz.* the old cock and hen, with all their young ones, or *powts*, as they flock or run together in thick woods or coppices, are taken; or particularly, when none but the old, and ſuch of the young as are of age fit for coupling, are taken; ſo that you cannot have any aſſurance with your nets to ſtrike at more than one or two at a time; for the pheaſant is of a melancholy ſullen diſpoſition, and when once they have coupled, do not accompany in flocks as other birds.

In order to the taking *pheaſants* with the greater eaſe, you muſt be acquainted with their haunts and uſual breeding-places, which are in young thick and well-grown coppices, free from the annoyances of cattle or path-ways; for they being of a very timerous nature, they eſteem the ſtrength of their covert their only ſafety, and do not abide, or breed in open or plain fields, nor under the covert of corn-fields, low ſhrubby buſhes, or in large and tall trees.

Having found their haunts, next you are to find their *eye*, or brood; and here you are to obſerve, that *pheaſants* come out of the woods and coverts thrice a day, to feed in freſh paſtures, green wheat, or other grain, and that is about ſun-riſing, about noon, and a little before ſun-ſet. Now the courſe to be followed, is to go to that ſide of the wood where you ſuppoſe they make their ſallies, and watch the places where they come out; or by ſearching their haunts; for you may ſee the young powts in that ſeaſon, flock and run together after the hen like chickens. Again, if you

go

go to their haunts early in the morning or late in the evening, you will hear the old cock and hen call their young ones, and the young ones anſwer them, and accordingly direct your path as near as you can to the place where they are, then lie down as cloſe as poſſible, that you may not be diſcerned; but withal, obſerve how they lodge together, the better to know how to pitch your nets with the greater advantage, both of wind, weather, and place; and take care that all be done as ſilently as poſſible, otherwiſe they will betake themſelves to their legs, and not to their wings, unleſs forced to it by a cloſe purſuit.

But the certaineſt way to find them out, is to have an artificial *pheaſant-call*, wherein a perſon ſhould be very expert in the imitation of their notes, and the time when, and to what purpoſe they uſe them, which calls are much the ſame as hens uſe in clucking their chickens.

The chief time for uſing the *call*, is in the morning early, or about ſun-ſet, at which time they ſeek their food, and then the note muſt be to call them to feed; but though theſe are the beſt times, yet the *call* muſt be uſed at other times, only altering the notes for calling them together, or the like.

Having the perfect uſe of the *call*, the knowledge of their haunts, and the times to take them, chuſe ſome private place not to be diſcovered, and then call at firſt very ſoftly, leſt any ſhould be lodged very near you, and be affrighted at your loud note; but if nothing reply, then raiſe your note higher and higher till it be extended to the utmoſt compaſs, and if any be within hearing they will anſwer in as loud a note as yours, provided it be tunable, or elſe all will be ſpoiled.

As ſoon as the *pheaſant* anſwers, if it be at a good diſtance, creep nearer and nearer, ſtill calling, but not ſo loud, and as you advance nearer, ſo will the *pheaſant* to you, ſo that you will come in ſight of her, either on the

the ground or at perch, always imitating her in her true note; then ceaſe calling, and ſpread your net between the *pheaſant* and yourſelf, in the moſt convenient place you can find, making one end of the net faſt to the ground, and holding the other in your hand by a long line, ſo that when any thing ſtrains it, you may pull the net cloſe together; which done, call again, and as ſoon as you perceive the *pheaſant* come under your net, riſe up and ſhew yourſelf, upon which being affrighted, ſhe will ſpring, and ſo become entangled in the net.

In caſe you have divers *pheaſants* anſwer the call, and that from ſeveral parts of the wood, then keep your firſt ſtation, and as you hear them to make towards you, ſo get your nets ready, ſpreading them conveniently about you, *viz.* one pair of nets on one ſide and another on the other, lying cloſe without any noiſe, only of your *call*, till you have allured them under your nets, and then ſtand up to affright them as aforeſaid, that they may be entangled in your nets.

Another way to take *pheaſants*, which is reckoned better than the former, and that is, to be provided with a *ſtale pheaſant*, that is, a live cock, which muſt be tied down to your net, who by his crowing will draw others in: You muſt lie concealed in ſome buſh or ſecret place, and when you ſee any *pheaſant* come to your net, then draw your line, and the net will fall on him and take him.

To take *pheaſants* by ſnares; when you have found their paſſage out of the wood to their uſual places of feeding, there plant a little ſtake, with a couple of ſnares of horſe-hair, one to lie flat on the ground for their feet, and the other about the height of their head, to take them by the neck; and in caſe there ſhould be more paſſes than one, you muſt do the like to every one of them; then fetch a compaſs about, and when you are in a direct line with the *pheaſant* and the ſnare

that you have fitted, then make a gentle noiſe to affright them.

If by their dunging and ſcraping you perceive that they frequent any place, you may then make uſe of ſuch hedge-rows as are directed to take fowl with lines and bird-lime, only plant your running-lines from them, of a convenient height, and ſtill place one to lie flat to entangle their legs.

To take *pheaſants* or *partridges*, and to preſerve the game in a man's own ground: When you perceive an *eye* of *pheaſants*, or *covey* of *partridges*, frequent ſuch and ſuch ground, go thither, and in ſome place thereof, diſtant from any hedge, buſh, or gate, about forty or fifty paces, pitch up four ſticks, each a foot long, in a ſquare, and in the middle of the ſticks ſcatter four or five handfuls of oats, barley, or wheat, and as you walk through the grounds from the ſticks, ſcatter a few corns, which may ſerve as a train to draw on the game to the great heap in the middle of the ſticks: Now the *pheaſants* and *partridges* coming to feed according to their cuſtom, will ſoon find out the train, and conſequently the great bait; they will not fail to return thither next morning, in hopes of another repaſt, againſt which time let it be laid ready for them, and pitch by every one of the four ſticks, a buſh of furz; if they eat the ſecond time, which you may diſcern by their dung, notwithſtanding the furz-buſhes, then againſt their next coming croſs ſome lines of packthread, in form of a net; and if for all this they come and eat, you may be ſure to take them when you pleaſe with the following device.

Take away the ſticks, furz-buſhes, and packthread, and then pitch the net deſcribed as follows.

The four main ſupporters of the net muſt be fixed ſtrongly in the ground, that the net may be lightly ſpread on the top: The four ſides of the net muſt be ordered in the ſame manner as ſhall be now directed by

by the example of one of them, lift up the ſide of the net over the top of the net that is ſpread, for the ſide muſt not lie flat, but ſtand ſloping like a pent-houſe, ſupported by ſmall twigs, the bottom faſtened in the earth, and the cord or verge of the net reſting on them; then place the four furz-buſhes at each corner of the net, the more to embolden them; and be ſure the running-cord of the net be exact and right, the two ends thereof muſt be tied to a ſtrong cord, which cord muſt reach to the next buſh or ſhelter where you lie concealed, but within view of the net; when all is fixed, ſpread the bait as formerly, but try once or twice how the net will draw, that upon occaſion all may be in good order; the beſt time to wait their coming is at break of day, when they are all buſy in eating the bait, then draw your line with a quick motion, and preſently fix it to the buſh where you are, and make all poſſible haſte to the net to prevent their eſcaping.

If you would preſerve a breed in your grounds, then kill the cocks, and keep the hens till towards Lent, in ſome convenient room, and then put them out into your grounds, and they will ſoon find cocks for a breed.

There is another way found moſt effectually for the taking of *pheaſants* in the winter-ſeaſon, provided there is no ſnow: Get a net in the form of a caſting-net, but larger, with the meſhes about five inches wide; then take ſome peas or wheat, and knowing their haunts, which will be in young coppices of about three or four years growths; in ſuch places ſeek out their path, and droppings or dung, which paths generally lead from the young coppices to thoſe that are older; and having found out any path, lay about a pint of the corn in the place, obſerving where you lay it, ſo that they may come to eat; thus do for ſe-

veral days or about a fortnight, by which time they will be ſo accuſtomed to it, that they will come to expect ſome food, and by this means, all, or moſt of the *pheaſants* in that part, will be gathered to it.

Having thus trained them, and that you certainly know when you come in the morning that they have been there, which will be found by their eating and the dung, then in ſuch places ſet your nets, that is, one in one place, which is done thus; tie the top of your nets to a bough, then ſpread it at the bottom, and peg it down to the ground on all parts except one, which muſt be raiſed up above a foot and a half, like an arched door, with an aſhen ſtick, then fix to the ſaid arch ſeveral rods made of hazle, with the taper ends to the earth, within the net, ſo that the *pheaſants* may come in by parting the ſticks, but not get out again.

Having thus ſet your nets, which muſt be made of coarſe thread, ſuch as rabbet-hays, and of a tanned colour, by putting them into a tan-pit, cover your nets with boughs to prevent them from finding them; and be ſure to ſet them ſome diſtance in the wood. The uſe of the nets is from the beginning of *May* to the latter end of *October*.

Of PIGEONS.

A PIGEON is a domeſtic bird, very well known, and fed in order to be eaten: I ſhall chiefly mention thoſe that are bred in pigeon or dove-houſes; ſome there are, for want of the conveniency of ſuch houſes, that are bred in coops and dove-cotes; in general we reckon but two ſorts of *pigeons*, the wild, and the tame; the tame rough-footed ones differ not much from the wild, only are ſomewhat bigger, and more familiar: the wild uſually perch upon trees, being

being ſeldom ſeen on the ground, and are very good food.

By wild *pigeons*, are meant thoſe that breed in woods, ſea-rocks, *&c.* and by the tame, ſuch as are bred in dove-houſes.

There are indeed many ſorts of *pigeons*, ſuch as *carriers*, *croppers*, *powters*, *horſemen*, *runts*, *jacobins*, *turbits*, *helmets*, *nuns*, *tumblers*, *barbs*, *petits*, *owls*, *ſpots*, *trumpeters*, *ſhakers*, *turners*, and *finikins*, from which proceed, when they are contrary matched together, baſtard-bred *pigeons*, ſuch as are called, from the *cropper*, or *powter* and the *carrier*, *powting-horſemen*; from the *tumbler* and the *horſemen*, *dragoons*: of the generality of theſe I ſhall ſay but little, they being only kept for fancy, and not for the profit of the table, though the ſame method is to be uſed in breeding them.

There are different ſorts of *runts*, one called *Spaniſh runts*, generally of a blood-red, or mottled colour; they are very looſe feathered, and large bodied, but breed not ſo often as the ſmaller ſorts.

Horſemen are excellent breeders, and are not eaſily loſt; the common *Engliſh runt* is a good ſized *pigeon*, and breeds well.

The *pigeon* called the *Leghorn*, is a ſort of *runt*, only diſtinguiſhed by a little wattle over his noſtril; he is a full bodied pigeon, whoſe feathers lie cloſe to his body, and is an excellent breeder, and generally of a grizzled colour, ermined round the neck.

To thoſe who keep *pigeons* for the ſake of good breeding, I would recommend baſtard-bred *pigeons*, ſuch as *powting-horſemen* *powting dragoons*, from a *powter* or *cropper*, and a *Leghorn*; the reaſon is, ſuch *pigeons* will breed nine or ten pair of young ones in a year, for the little puff of wind thrown in from the *powter*, gives them a heat and mirth; they will continually be playing or courting, and when they

have young ones, will feed them well, which a *cropper*, by reaſon of the bigneſs of his crop, ſeldom doth.

Carriers breed but ſlowly, three or four pair a year for them, is much, by reaſon of their cold nature; they are conſtant lovers, and very rarely tread any but their own mate, and therefore hard to match when ſeparate; they will often take three months time.

On the contrary, a *powter* will tread any hen that will let him, at any time; and take him from his own mate, and he will match to another in a day or two; ſo that baſtard-bred *pigeons* are moſt ſerviceable for thoſe who breed them to ſupply the table.

Great care muſt be taken to make convenient places to breed in, each pair of *pigeons* muſt be ſure to have two neſts, with baſkets in them is beſt, for before one pair can go out of the neſt, or feed themſelves, the old ones will lay and be ſitting; nay, I have often ſeen a ſecond pair hatched before the firſt could feed themſelves, and the old ones feed both pair. Be ſure when you take the young ones, clean the neſt, or put in a clean baſket, for cleanlineſs is a great help.

Never let them want meat, for if you do they cannot be provided with ſoft meat in their crop when the young hatch, which if wanting, the young ones certainly die; or if you feed the old ones by hand, they will go feed their young immediately with what they get, which they not being able to digeſt, kills them; ſo that the beſt way is to let them have meat always by them in a box, with a hopper in it made for that purpoſe.

Breed young ones for ſtock in the ſpring, thoſe bred in the winter being generally crampt, and never prove good breeders.

The reaſon why I recommend baſkets to breed in, is, tame *pigeons* ſeldom build their neſts, the want of which a baſket ſupplies. Be ſure take care no vermin comes among them.

Of

Of thoſe bred in pigeon-houſes, the grey *pigeon*, inclining to aſh-colour and black, is the beſt; and ſhe generally ſhews her fruitfulneſs by the redneſs of her eyes and feet, and by the ring of gold colour which is about her neck.

There are two ſeaſons in the year wherein you may ſtock your pigeon-houſe, the firſt is in *May*; foraſmuch as theſe firſt *pigeons* having much ſtrengthened themſelves during the winter, are in a condition ſoon to yield profit to the buyer. *Secondly*, in *Auguſt*, for at that time there are a great number of young *pigeons* that have been well fed with the corn which their dams, both cocks and hens, have plentifully ſupplied them with, from the harveſt in that ſeaſon.

You muſt take care to furniſh your pigeon-houſe according to the bigneſs of it; if you put but a few in it, 'twill be a great while before you will have the pleaſure of eating young *pigeons*, for you muſt take none out of the pigeon-houſe before it is well ſtocked.

Be ſure to feed them in hard weather, and in benting-time, which is when the corn is in the ear, and keep out the vermin, and you will never want ſtock.

It is good to give them loom, mixed with ſalt and cummin ſeed, mixed well, made up in lumps and dried; it provokes luſt, and helps them in breeding.

Be ſure never to let them want freſh water. The beſt food is tares; the mornings and evenings are proper times to give them their meat, and never at noon, for fear of breaking their reſt, which they uſually take at that hour, which rooſt is very neceſſary to make them thrive with the food which they eat.

A Secret to hinder Pigeons *from quitting the pigeon-houſe.*

Take the head and feet of a gelt he-goat, and boil them together till the fleſh ſeparates from the bone; take this fleſh and boil it again in the ſame liquor, till the whole is conſumed; bruiſe into this decoction, which

which is very thick, ſome potter's earth, out of which you are to take all the ſtones, vetch, dung, hemp, food and corn; the whole muſt be kneaded together and reduced to a paſte or dough, which form into ſmall loaves about the thickneſs of two fiſts, and dry them in the ſun or oven, and take care it do not burn; when they are baked, lay them in ſeveral parts of the pigeon-houſe, and as ſoon as they are ſet there the *pigeons* will amuſe themſelves with pecking them, and finding ſome taſte therein which pleaſes them, they will keep ſo cloſe to it that they will not afterwards leave it but with regret. Others take a handful of ſalt, which they candy, and afterwards put it into the pigeon-houſe. Some take a goat's head and boil it in water, with ſalt, cummin, hemp, and urine, and then expoſe it in the pigeon-houſe, with which they amuſe the *pigeons*. Laſtly, there are thoſe who fry millet in honey, adding a little water thereto to prevent it's burning too; this preparation is a repaſt to them, and will cauſe them to have ſuch an affection for their ordinary habitation, that they will be ſo far from abandoning it themſelves that they will draw ſtrange *pigeons* to it.

Pigeons will live eight years, but they are only prolific for the firſt four years, afterwards they are worth nothing, for when they are once paſt that age, all they do is to deprive you of the profit you might reap by others that are younger. It is ſomething difficult to know how to diſtinguiſh their age.

If you would furniſh your table with young ones in the winter, and feed daintily, you muſt not tarry for them till they can fly, but take them when they are grown pretty ſtrong; pluck the largeſt quills out of their wings, which will confine them to their neſts; others tie their feet, or elſe break the bones of their legs, by which means they will be fat in a very ſhort time, becauſe the ſubſtance of the nouriſhment they receive

receive being then not ſo much diſperſed, turns into fat.

PIGEON-HOUSE, a piece of œconomy of which a great deal may be ſaid, there being an infinite number of things to be obſerved, in order to get a pigeon-houſe that may be advantageous and profitable to you: to begin therefore; the firſt thing is to pitch upon a convenient place, of which none is more proper than in the middle of a court-yard, which is ſuppoſed to be ſpacious enough, or without the houſe, by reaſon *pigeons* are naturally of a fearful diſpoſition, and the leaſt noiſe they hear frightens them; hence it is, that they always make pigeon-houſes with much care and a great deal of reaſon, at ſuch a diſtance, that the ruſling noiſe of the trees ſhaken by the wind, and the over-murmurings of the water, may not affright them.

As to the bigneſs of the pigeon-houſe, that depends upon the fancy of thoſe who build them; but it is better they ſhould be ſpacious than too little; and for it's form, the round is be preferred before the ſquare ones, becauſe rats cannot ſo eaſily come at the one as at the other; and the round houſe is alſo more commodious, becauſe you may, by the means of a ladder turning upon an axis, eaſily viſit all that is within the pigeon-houſe, and come near the neſts without being propped, and take the *pigeons* in them; ſo that you may effect that by the conveniency of this ladder here, which cannot be done in a ſquare pigeon-houſe.

Now to hinder rats from getting upon the outſide into a pigeon-houſe, they faſten tin plates to a certain height, and in ſuch places where the rats might paſs, at the outward angles of a ſquare pigeon-houſe; theſe plates ought to be a foot high, and raiſed above half a foot on the ſides, that when the rats come to them and cannot catch hold of them, they fall upon the iron ſpikes which are uſually fixed at the bottom, or the place where you foreſee they may fall.

Moreover,

Moreover, care ſhould be had that the pigeon-houſe ſhould be placed at ſome ſmall diſtance from water, that ſo the *pigeons* may carry it to their young ones; and the ſame being a little warmed in their bills it will be more wholeſome for them than when it is cold.

Care ſhould be taken that the boards which cover the pigeon-houſe ſhould be well joined together, in ſuch manner that neither rats nor wind can paſs through; the covering alſo ſhould be ſuch that no rain may penetrate through it; eſpecially, it ought to be raiſed on good ſolid foundations, the floor good, the building ſolid, and well cemented, becauſe *pigeons* dung has an ill property of ruining foundations; they muſt be hard plaiſtered, and white-waſhed within and without, that being the colour moſt pleaſing to the *pigeons*. It muſt be a conſtant caution, that there be no window or opening of the pigeon-houſe to the eaſtward, but they muſt always, as much as may, be placed to the ſouth, for *pigeons* love directly to feel the ſun, and eſpecially in winter; but if by reaſon of the ſituation of the place, you can do no otherwiſe than make the window of the pigeon-houſe to face to the north, you muſt always keep it ſhut cloſe in cold weather, and open it in ſummer, that the cooling air may have paſſage into the place, which is refreſhing and delightful to *pigeons* in that ſeaſon of the year.

The pigeon-houſe ſhould have two cinctures built without, either of free-ſtone or parget, one of which is to reach to the middle of the pidgeon-houſe, and the other under the window, through which the *pigeons* go in and out; theſe two incloſures are made on purpoſe that the birds may reſt upon when they return out of the fields.

F I N I S.

Moreover, care ſhould be had that the pigeon-houſe ſhould be placed at ſome ſmall diſtance from water, that ſo the *pigeons* may carry it to their young ones; and the ſame being a little warmed in their bills it will be more wholeſome for them than when it is cold.

Care ſhould be taken that the boards which cover the pigeon-houſe ſhould be well joined together, in ſuch manner that neither rats nor wind can paſs through; the covering alſo ſhould be ſuch that no rain may penetrate through it; eſpecially, it ought to be raiſed on good ſolid foundations, the floor good, the building ſolid, and well cemented, becauſe *pigeons* dung has an ill property of ruining foundations; they muſt be hard plaiſtered, and white-waſhed within and without, that being the colour moſt pleaſing to the *pigeons*. It muſt be a conſtant caution, that there be no window or opening of the pigeon-houſe to the eaſtward, but they muſt always, as much as may, be placed to the ſouth, for *pigeons* love directly to feel the ſun, and eſpecially in winter; but if by reaſon of the ſituation of the place, you can do no otherwiſe than make the window of the pigeon-houſe to face to the north, you muſt always keep it ſhut cloſe in cold weather, and open it in ſummer, that the cooling air may have paſſage into the place, which is refreſhing and delightful to *pigeons* in that ſeaſon of the year.

The pigeon-houſe ſhould have two cinctures built without, either of free-ſtone or parget, one of which is to reach to the middle of the pidgeon-houſe, and the other under the window, through which the *pigeons* go in and out; theſe two incloſures are made on purpoſe that the birds may reſt upon when they return out of the fields.

F I N I S.